

# Typesetting Poetry Collections with `poemscol`\*

John Burt  
burt@brandeis.edu

June 20, 2013

## Abstract

`poemscol` provides macros for  $\text{\LaTeX}$  for setting collections of poetry. It is especially suited for setting collections of poetry in which several volumes are combined, such as in a critical edition of a poet's Collected Poems. It provides the structures required to produce a critical edition of the kind specified by the Modern Language Association's Committee on Scholarly Editions, and it automatically marks every occasion where a stanza break falls on a page break.

## Contents

<b>1</b>	<b>Introduction</b>	<b>3</b>
<b>2</b>	<b>Dependencies and compatibility with other packages</b>	<b>5</b>
2.1	Prose sections . . . . .	5
2.2	Multi-layer footnotes . . . . .	5
2.3	Verse drama and dramatist . . . . .	6
2.4	Compatibility with earlier versions of <code>poemscol</code> . . . . .	6
2.5	Incompatibility with <code>memoir</code> and <code>verse</code> . . . . .	7
2.6	Crop marks . . . . .	7
<b>3</b>	<b>Marking up individual poems</b>	<b>7</b>
3.1	The title of the poem . . . . .	7
3.2	The body of the poem . . . . .	8
3.3	Special features . . . . .	10
<b>4</b>	<b>Making a table of contents</b>	<b>13</b>
4.1	Contents entries for notes sections and the index . . . . .	14
<b>5</b>	<b>Making an index of titles and first lines</b>	<b>15</b>
5.1	Making Multiple Indices . . . . .	15

---

\*This document corresponds to `poemscol` 2.64, dated 2 August 2013.

<b>6 Collections with multiple volumes</b>	<b>16</b>
<b>7 Recording textual notes</b>	<b>17</b>
7.1 Setup for sections for textual notes, emendations, and explanatory notes . . . . .	17
7.2 Textual notes of various kinds . . . . .	18
<b>8 Creating new kinds of endnote</b>	<b>20</b>
<b>9 Multi-level footnotes</b>	<b>22</b>
<b>10 Pulling it all together</b>	<b>23</b>
<b>11 Special cases</b>	<b>24</b>
11.1 Epigraphs, attributions etc. . . . .	24
11.2 Inset prose quotations . . . . .	25
11.3 Multiline poem titles . . . . .	25
11.4 Italicized poem titles and empty poem titles . . . . .	25
11.5 Poems in sections . . . . .	26
11.6 Poetic sequences . . . . .	26
11.7 Customizing titles . . . . .	29
11.8 Quoted Verse . . . . .	31
11.9 Visual formatting . . . . .	31
<b>12 Customizing page geometry</b>	<b>32</b>
12.1 Font sizes, skips, sinks indents, and penalties . . . . .	32
12.2 Page styles . . . . .	33
12.3 Page geometry and type leading . . . . .	33
<b>13 Prose Sections</b>	<b>34</b>
<b>14 Paragraph and Sentence Annotation</b>	<b>37</b>
14.1 Cross Reference by Sentence and Paragraph . . . . .	38
14.2 End notes by Sentence and Paragraph . . . . .	39
14.3 Footnotes by Sentence and Paragraph . . . . .	39
14.4 Bible Chapter and Verse . . . . .	39
<b>15 Parallel Text Editions</b>	<b>39</b>
<b>16 Using poemscol in a Multilingual World</b>	<b>40</b>
<b>17 A sample driver file</b>	<b>41</b>
<b>18 A sample poem markup</b>	<b>42</b>
<b>19 A sample divider page</b>	<b>44</b>

<b>20 Implementation</b>	<b>46</b>
20.1 Page geometry and crop marks . . . . .	46
20.1.1 Internal font size commands . . . . .	47
20.2 Miscellaneous dimensions and constants . . . . .	48
20.3 Verse . . . . .	49
20.4 Miscellaneous internal counters . . . . .	50
20.5 Miscellaneous token lists . . . . .	51
20.6 Miscellaneous booleans . . . . .	51
20.7 Page styles . . . . .	52
20.8 Environments: poem, and stanza . . . . .	54
20.9 Environments: main title page, divider pages . . . . .	56
20.10 Marginal line numbers, verse lines, line cross references, etc. . . . .	57
20.11 Setup for contents, textual notes, emendations, and explanatory notes . . . . .	64
20.12 Book, volume, and volume section titles . . . . .	69
20.13 Commands for setting titles of poems and sequences . . . . .	70
20.13.1 Poem Titles . . . . .	71
20.13.2 Poetic Sequences: Setting the Main Title . . . . .	76
20.13.3 Sections of poetic sequences . . . . .	77
20.13.4 Subsections of sequences . . . . .	80
20.14 Epigraphs, headnotes, attributions, dedications . . . . .	86
20.15 Tools used for making note sections . . . . .	86
20.16 Commands to make notes and send info to contents . . . . .	88
20.17 Emendations and explanatory notes . . . . .	91
20.18 Making new notes sections . . . . .	92
20.19 Prose sections . . . . .	96
20.20 Annotation by Sentence and Paragraph Number . . . . .	100
20.21 Using Footnotes . . . . .	108
20.22 Embarrassing kludges . . . . .	109
20.23 Marking stanza breaks on page turns . . . . .	110
20.24 Parallel Texts . . . . .	110
20.25 Finishing up . . . . .	118
20.26 Visual formatting . . . . .	122
20.27 Special environments: cjquotation and theindex . . . . .	122

## 1 Introduction

`poemscol` provides the structures necessary for editing a critical edition of a volume of poems or of a collection of a poet’s works. `poemscol` numbers the lines, and produces separate, formatted endnote sections for emendations, textual collations, and explanatory notes (or, optionally, multi-layered footnotes), tying each note the number of the line upon which it is a comment. It also automatically generates a table of contents, an index of titles and first lines, and divider pages for the sections of the volumes. It produces running headers of the form “Emendations

to pp. xx-yy” for the note sections. And it marks occasions when a stanza break falls at a page break.

Producing line numbers for verse is something for which L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X would seem to be especially suited. A line of verse, after all, is not a carriage return but a logical unit, an element of versification more than of typesetting, perhaps running over several physical lines, or perhaps split into half-lines as speakers or subjects change. With `poemscol` you mark lines, stanzas, and entire poems up as logical units, and L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X does the formatting and counting. Once you have marked out the logical units of the poem, `poemscol` will automatically mark every textual note, emendation, or explanatory note with the range of line numbers to which it applies.

In poetry which does not have a regular stanzaic form, it is useful to be able to mark automatically occasions where there is a stanza break at the bottom of a page which the reader might not notice. Doing this by hand is not only tedious and easy to get wrong, but also a process you will have to start over again if anything about your volume changes, if you add a poem, say, or even decide to break a title across two lines. `poemscol` takes care of this process, so that the editor need never worry about it, automatically marking cases where the page break coincides with a stanza break with a symbol.

Editions of Collected Poetry might also require special structures to reflect the fact that they are made up of the contents of several volumes of poetry. In particular, such editions require special structures for setting up specially formatted divider pages between volumes. They also require tables of contents and other front matter. `poemscol` provides these structures.

The best features of `poemscol` are of course simply that it is T<sub>E</sub>X: it uses T<sub>E</sub>X’s automatic kerning and setting of ligatures, its algorithm for justifying lines (in prose sections), and L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X’s way of setting verse.

Using L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X to typeset critical editions offers more advantages than simply the ability to automate tedious and easy to fumble tasks. Modern T<sub>E</sub>X compilers have the ability to produce output in Adobe pdf format. Adobe pdf output can be used as camera ready copy, saving your publisher time and expense, and perhaps making a marginally economic critical edition a bit easier to bring to press. Furthermore, since typesetting the edition yourself in L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X obviates the publisher’s own typesetting of your text, it removes another possible source of new errors. (You should expect to work with your publisher on the final design of the book, but L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X is a flexible language which will enable you to reproduce most book designs.)

Editions made in the formats of proprietary software such as QuarkXPress<sup>©</sup> or InDesign<sup>©</sup> will become not only obsolete but unreadable if those programs pass from use. Since your L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X sources for your edition are in ASCII, or perhaps Unicode, they provide a permanent record of your local intentions at every point in your edition, whether or not those who wish to consult your files have access to a L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X compiler, or indeed whether or not they can read L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X code.

Finally, although L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X is a typesetting language, not a content markup language, the ability to create new commands which the language offers comes very close to enabling one to realize the ideal of completely separating content markup

from formatting. One advantage of this kind of markup is that even if the appearance of the poem on the page may be ambiguous, the editor's intentions about the logical structure of the poem will be preserved in the  $\LaTeX$  source. Should you wish later to produce an electronic edition of your work, either using XML or the SGML markup approved by the Text Encoding Initiative, transforming your texts from  $\LaTeX$  to XML would largely (although not entirely) be a matter of performing a series of global search-and-replaces, and could conceivably be done with a perl script.

`poemscol` is also suited for verse drama, and the package `dramatist` has been modified to work with `poemscol`. `poemscol` can provide line numbers and notes for prose sections such as the author's introduction or prose poetry, and it can also handle inset prose passages in the midst of verse. `poemscol` is not, however, designed for typesetting large scale prose works, although very possibly it could be tweaked to work. For critical editions of prose works, several other packages are available, including the `EDMAC` format, a  $\TeX$  format analogous to but distinct from  $\LaTeX$ , by John Lavagnino and Dominik Wujastyk, or `ledmac`, a port of `EDMAC` into  $\LaTeX$  by Peter Wilson, or `ednotes`, a completely independent set of macros for critical editions which builds on `manypar` and `lineno`, by Uwe Lück.

## 2 Dependencies and compatibility with other packages

`poemscol` depends upon several other packages, which you should be sure you have in your preamble and search path: `fancyhdr` for managing the running headers, `makeidx` and `multicol` for managing the index, `geometry`, and `ifthen` and `keyval` to simplify page geometry. If you are using the `\JHpoemtitle` alternate form of the `\poemtitle` command, you need to add `mparhack` to your package list, to make sure that the marginal references `\JHpoemtitle` adds appear on the correct side of the page. You should make sure that `poemscol` is the very last package you load in your preamble, or at least is loaded after those packages upon which it depends.

If you are planning to generate multiple indices, substitute `splitindex` for `makeidx` in your list of packages.

### 2.1 Prose sections

If you plan to number lines in prose contexts, and to make textual notes, emendations, or explanatory notes in prose contexts, you will need to add the `lineno` package to your preamble. I use the “right” and “modulo” options with this package, but you can set the options however you wish to make how you number the lines of prose sections consistent with how you number the lines of verse sections.

### 2.2 Multi-layer footnotes

If you plan to use paragraph-formatted footnotes rather than endnotes, you should load `manyfoot`. You should load it with the “ruled,” and “para” options.

(`poemscol`'s footnote commands are just a wrapper around `manyfoot`.) `manyfoot` inherited some of the limitations of `LATEX` in dealing with long inserts at the end of the page, so you may have to do some fiddling. As fixes to these problems emerge, I will incorporate them into `poemscol`. `manyfoot` does not allow multiple paragraph footnotes when typesetting in “para” mode. This is probably a feature, not a bug, since one would want such notes to be set in several paragraphs, rather than running them together into one, as `manyfoot` would naturally want to do in para mode. For that reason, I have defined the two traditional classes of note in which multiple paragraph notes are likely to appear, “sources,” and “explanatory notes,” to be typeset in “plain” mode, which opens a new paragraph with each note. If your textual notes or emendations sections also have multiple paragraph notes, you should re-define them in order to produce footnotes in plain rather than in para mode, if you wish to produce footnotes rather than endnotes.

### 2.3 Verse drama and dramatist

Massimiliano Dominici has made his `dramatist` package compatible with `poemscol`, for which I am very grateful. Versions 1.2a or later of `dramatist` are compatible with versions 2.3 or later of `poemscol`.

### 2.4 Compatibility with earlier versions of `poemscol`

Making `poemscol` compatible with `lineno` required me also to change the commands for turning verse line numbering on and off, which means that version 2.3 of `poemscol` is incompatible with prior versions. The old command `\makelinenumbers` has been replaced with `\makeverselinenumbers` to distinguish it from a command from the `lineno` world. (`\makelinenumbers` will still work, but I have deprecated it.) To turn on verse line numbering, issue `\makeverselinenumbers`. Because the counter “linenumber” has been changed to “verselinenumbers,” you must use `\global\verselinenumbersfalse` to turn off line numbering, rather than `\global\linenumbersfalse` as before.

Up to version 2.44 `poemscol` borrowed the code for `\sidepar` non-floating marginal paragraphs from the memoir class, and also made `\leftsidepar` and `\rightsidepar` commands on their model. Version 2.46 modified Peter Wilson’s original code for `\sidepar`, so therefore I have changed the names of `\sidepar`, `\leftsidepar`, and `\rightsidepar` to `\pmclsidepar`, `\pmclleftsidepar` and `\pmclrightsidepar` respectively. If you used any of these commands in your files, you will need to change their names.

Up to version 2.5 the `\definewnotetype` command took four arguments, using the third argument for both the running header for the notes section and for the entry in the table of contents. In order to make it easier to handle titles in languages other than English I have found it necessary to separate these two uses, so `\definewnotetype` now takes five arguments. You will need to retrofit files that use the old version of this command. You can see the details at section 8, page 20.

## 2.5 Incompatibility with memoir and verse

Unfortunately, `poemscol` is not compatible with the `memoir` class and the `verse` package, because they share some command names. I am preparing a workaround for this problem.

## 2.6 Crop marks

`poemscol` no longer provides cropmarks, but is compatible with the style packages that do. I use `crop`, with the `letter`, `pdftex`, `cam`, and `center` options.

# 3 Marking up individual poems

First, a word about the command names. The command names may seem ugly and long. And there are separate commands for many tasks that seem closely related, such as a command to mark the title of a section of a poetic sequence, and a separate command to mark a subsection. But the names do describe pretty much what each macro does, and they do specify exactly what the object they mark is supposed to be. The markup is designed to look like content markup, marking objects as a poem title, as a stanza, as a line, and so on. `poemscol` gives all of these content terms typographical meaning.

There are also many commands for special purposes whose necessity may not seem clear until the editor finds him or herself in the jam the command was designed for. For instance, `poemscol` normally encourages a page break before the title of a poem, or before the title of a section of a poetic sequence, to discourage page breaks between the title and the poem. But for the first section of a poetic sequence, or the first section of a poem in sections, one does not want to encourage L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X to break the page before the title, since that would leave the title of the sequence or the title of the larger poem as a widow on the previous page. `\sequencefirstsectiontitle` and its siblings are designed for this situation. Although all commands like `\sequencefirstsectiontitle` discourage page breaks before the title (and all of the commands discourage page breaks after the title), they will still sometimes happen, particularly if you have a multi-line sequence title followed by a multi-line section title. For these cases, page breaks will have to be explicitly issued.

## 3.1 The title of the poem

`\poemtitle` `\poemtitle{}`, as its name implies, sets the title of the poem. `poemscol` gives default values for such things as the font size, the separation between the top of the title and the bottom of the previous poem, the separation between the bottom of the title and the first line, and so on. It also sets penalties in order to encourage page breaks just before a title, and to discourage page breaks between a title and a poem. You can change all these values in your header file by changing the value of the parameters listed below in the implementation section using either `\setlength` or `\renewcommand` (depending upon what you are changing).

`\poemtitlefont` globally sets the font size (and leading) for all poem titles in the main text. `\contentspoemtitlefont` globally sets the font size (and leading) for poem titles in the table of contents. `\afterpoemtitleskip` sets the vertical separation between a poem and its title. `\afterpoemskip` sets the vertical separation between the end of a poem and the title of the next poem. `\poemtitlepenalty` encourages but does not require a page break just before a poem title. A complete list of all of the special commands for setting font sizes, skips, and penalties, is in section 12.1 below.

In the actual text of the poem, you need only use the `\poemtitle{}` macro to specify the title of the poem. The macro takes one argument — the title, of course. The macro typesets the title in the body of the volume (testing first to see whether there is enough space at the bottom of the page to get the title and a couple of lines of the poem in), typesets the title in the table of contents (with the page number), typesets the title in the textual notes (adding the page number, and checking to see whether there is room enough on the page), and prepares similar entries in the lists of emendations and in the explanatory notes (if you need them). Multiple line titles, titles of subsections of poems, titles of sequences of poems, and titles of the elements of a sequence of poems are all special cases, with special commands, which will be dealt with below. You can also create new varieties of title. For instructions on how to do this, see section 11.7 below, page 29.

`\poemsubtitle` Subtitles of poems should be issued as the arguments to the `\poemsubtitle{}` macro.

`\titleindent` For indented parts of titles. In the macros for setting the sections and subsections of poetic sequences, `poemscol` uses `\titleindent` internally to set up a hierarchy of indentations. (A section of a sequence is indented one `\titleindent`. A subsection is indented two. And so on.) `\titleindent` is also used internally in the commands for multiple line titles. Instructions about changing the value of `\titleindent` can be found in section 12.1.

### 3.2 The body of the poem

`poem` The body of every poem should be placed in a `poem` environment. Putting the body of the poem between `\begin{poem}` and `\end{poem}` resets the line counter to 1, and puts the poem in a `verse` environment (to handle run over lines automatically). `poemscol` slightly modifies the `verse` environment from the standard  $\text{\LaTeX}$  definition, increasing the indentation used for run over lines, in order to make the difference between the indented run over portion of a long line, on one hand, and an explicitly indented second line, more obvious in the output.

The `poem` environment takes an optional argument. If your poem has short lines, and you wish to center it on the page, rather than set it against the left margin of the normal `poem` environment, you can give the width of the line you want to use to center the poem as the argument. Alternatively, the length `\versewidth` can be used as the argument. You can set the length of `\versewidth` to the proper amount using `\settowidth` as follows: `\settowidth{\versewidth}{Text of line to use for centering}`. To



use `\versewidth` to center the poem on a sample line, enter the `poem` environment this way: `\begin{poem}[\versewidth]`.

`\centertitles`

If you center the poem on a sample line, you probably also want to center the title of the poem too, which you can do by issuing `\centertitles`.

`poemscol` turns off automatic hyphenation in poetry environments. The idea here is that every hyphen in the printed poem is authorial, obviating the need for you to compile a hyphenated-lines list to distinguish between authorial hyphens and hyphens you added for lineation purposes. Line-ending hyphens should not be a feature of verse anyway, I think. (You may wish to change this for your own edition, in order to improve its look; but if you do so you must keep track of added hyphens yourself. This list will be easy to compile, however, because only authorial hyphens will appear in your source code. Automatically added hyphens will appear only in the output. You might even modify the output routine so that automatically added hyphens have a different look. That would be non-trivial, but Donald Knuth has an exercise about doing just that in *The T<sub>E</sub>Xbook*.) `poemscol` turns automatic hyphenation back on in prose contexts, so if you wish to keep a hyphenation list for such things as authorial prefaces and so on, you must do so yourself manually. (Alternatively, you can turn automatic hyphenation off in those contexts as well, by setting the `\language` to 255. For an example of how to do this, look at the definition of the `\poem` environment in the implementation section below. If you do turn automatic hyphenation off, it would be wise to restrict the change to some particular environment, rather than changing the `\language` globally. You might wish, for instance, to turn automatic hyphenation off in the `\prosesection` environment.)

`stanza`

Every stanza should be placed in its own stanza environment. Every poem should have at least one stanza. Marking the beginning and end of every stanza (with `\begin{stanza}` and `\end{stanza}`) provides `poemscol` with a way of detecting cases in which a page boundary falls on a stanza break, since in those cases a page turn happens when one is *inside* a poem environment but *not* inside a stanza environment. Further, marking the beginning and end of every stanza makes the logical structure of the poem (and the editor's intentions about it) clear to readers of your source code.

`poemscol` adds a little bit more white space between stanzas than the standard L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X `verse` environment does. (I found that the standard stanza breaks did not leap out on the page as stanza breaks.)

`\stanzaatbottom`

`\nostanzaatbottom`

If you wish to change the symbol used to mark cases in which a break falls on a page turn, issue the command `\stanzaatbottom{}`, using as the argument whatever you wish to use to mark such cases. The default is `*`, which is suitable for a published volume. If you are preparing a typescript for submission, you may wish to set `\stanzaatbottom` to "stanza break."

If you wish also to mark all cases where there is NOT a stanza break at the bottom of the page, issue the command `\nostanzaatbottom{}`, using as the argument whatever you wish to mark such cases. The default is `\relax` (which is to say, "don't do anything").

`\verseline`

`\verseline` should mark the end of every line, except the last line of every stanza (which should be marked with `\end{stanza}`). `\verseline` marks the

end of every line as a prosodic unit (since a line of verse is not simply a carriage return), and advances the line counter. There are commands below for changing the line counter’s horizontal placement (how close it is to the left or right margin of the line) and appearance. (See section 20.10 for these.)

`\setverselinemodulo` `\setverselinemodulo` sets how often a marginal line number appears. To print a line number every five lines, issue `\setverselinemodulo{5}`. The default value is 10.

`\makeverselinenumbers` Marginal verse line numbering is on by default. To turn line numbering off, issue `\global\verselinenumbersfalse`. To turn it back on, issue `\makeverselinenumbers`.

`\verselinenumberstoright` To put all of the line numbers to the left, issue `\verselinenumberstoleft` in your preamble. `\verselinenumberstoright` puts the line numbers in the right margin. (These two commands use non-floating marginal note macros derived from the memoir class, `\pmcleftsidepar` and `\pmcrightsidepar`, respectively.) If you wish them to appear in the outer margins, issue `\verselinenumbersouter` in your preamble. If you want the line numbers to appear in the inner margins, issue `\verselinenumbersgutter` in your preamble. (These two commands use `\pmcsidepar`, derived from `\sidepar` from the memoir class, but modified by Dan Leucking.) You can adjust the distance between the marginal line number and the text with `\setlength{\marginparsep}{}`. The default value for `\marginparsep` is 18pt, and the default value for the width of the box in which the line numbers are set, `\marginparwidth`, is 10 pt.

The line numbers should print on the baseline. You can adjust them to move them up or down by changing the value of a length called `\pmcsideparvshift`. The default value is `\setlength{\pmcsideparvshift}{0ex}`.

### 3.3 Special features

`\linebend` `poemscol` automatically runs over long lines, indenting the run over portion on the next physical line. If you are unhappy with where `poemscol` has run over a particular line, you can “bend” that line by issuing `\linebend` at the point where you wish it to run over. The run over portion of the line will be indented just as if `poemscol` had “bent” the line at your selected point. This command only works if you have chosen to bend the line at some point earlier than `poemscol` would have chosen on its own. If you really do want to extend a line further into the right margin, you can probably do so by using a combination of `\nobreak` and `\hbox{}`, or by turning all of the spaces in that line into unbreakable spaces, marked with `~` in your source. But `poemscol` will complain if you do this, and rightly so, since the result is likely to be ugly.

You may also wish to use `\linebend` to reproduce how your author broke up long lines on the page (if you know that your author cared about such things and did not leave them up to the typesetter).

`\linebend` should only be used for managing run over lines, not for cases in which a line is to be broken into separate half-lines. For cases in which a line is to be broken into half-lines, use the `\brokenline` macro. The two macros do similar (but not identical) things. But a “linebend” is a feature of typesetting,

and a “broken line” is a feature of versification, and it seems best to distinguish them logically. (`\linebend`, like `\brokenline`, issues a carriage return without incrementing the line number, but `\linebend` adds indentation to the next line.)

`\runoverindent` To change the indentation for the run over portion of verse lines globally, issue the amount of indentation as the argument to `\runoverindent{}`. `\runoverindent{}` is currently set to 6 em, rather more than the standard amount in the definition of the L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X `verse` environment. By default, the runover portion of long lines is indented. You may wish to flush the runover portion to the right margin instead. For instructions about how to do this, see section 3.3, page 12.

`\verseindent` The `\verseindent` command is to be used for formally indented lines. It should not be used to indent the run over portion of long lines (which `poemscol` handles automatically anyway). `\verseindent` indents the line a bit less than the run over portion of long “bent” lines are indented, so that the two cases can be visually distinguished. By default, the length of `\verseindent` is 2 em. To change it, say to 3 em, issue `\renewcommand{\verseindent}{\hspace{3em}}`

`\brokenline` `\brokenline` should be used where you wish to break the line without incrementing the line counter. Authors often break a line into two half-lines, setting the beginning of the second half-line flush with the end of the first half-line. (Sometimes these broken lines indicate a change of speaker. Sometimes they just indicate a change of subject, usually an abrupt one, a change which calls attention to itself by interrupting a line rather than waiting for a line break or stanza break). `\brokenline` is normally used with `\versephantom{}`, which adds white space exactly as long as its argument would have been had it been set in type. `\versephantom{}` thus provides an easy way of setting the beginning of the second half-line flush with the end of the first, whatever the font size or special formatting of the first line.

The sestet of Yeats’s sonnet “Leda and the Swan,” has such a broken line:

```
A shudder in the loins engenders there
The broken wall, the burning roof and tower
And Agamemnon dead.
                Being so caught up,
So mastered by the brute blood of the air,
Did she put on his knowledge with his power
Before the indifferent beak could let her drop?
```

To set the broken line properly, issue:

```
And Agamemnon dead.\brokenline
\versephantom{And Agamemnon dead.} Being so caught up,\verseline
```

`\tweakbrokenline` By default, `poemscol` sets the line numbers level with the ends of broken lines. If the line numbers are set to the right of the text, this seems the obvious choice. Conceivably you might want to set the line number level with the beginning of a broken line when the line numbers are set to the left. To ensure that the line numbers of broken lines are set level with the beginning of a broken line when the line number is on the left, issue `\tweakbrokenline` in your preamble.

You should issue `\tweakbrokenline` with caution, because although it changes how `\brokenline` is handled, it does not change the handling of long lines with `runover`. `Runover` lines will still set the line number level with the end of the line. You can have `runover` lines set their line number level with the beginning of the line by issuing `\startverseline` at the beginning of the line.

`\brokenlineatbeginning`

Conceivably you might want `\brokenline` to set the line number level with the beginning of the line in every case. To do this, issue `\brokenlineatbeginning` in your preamble. If you do this, you should be prepared to mark the beginning of `runover` lines with `\startverseline`.

`\startverseline`

If you begin a verse line with `\startverseline` the line number will be set level with the beginning of the line rather than with the end. This is useful, for instance, if you want to ensure that the line number of a line with `runover` is set level with the beginning of the line. You can, if you don't want to keep track of where `runover` lines are, start every line with `\startverseline`.

`\tweakstartverseline`

Rather than setting the line number of every `runover` line level with the beginning of the line, it may make more sense for you to set the line number level with the beginning in cases where the line number is to the left, and level with the end in cases where the line number is to the right. You might want to do this, for instance, if you have decided to set all the verse lines at the outer margin (by issuing `\verselinenumbersouter` in your preamble), or have decided to set all the verse lines at the inner margin (by issuing `\verselinenumbersgutter` in your preamble). To ensure that `\startverseline` does this, issue `\tweakstartverseline` in your preamble.

`\stanzalinestraddle`

Some poets (such as Robert Penn Warren) occasionally introduce a stanza break in the middle of a broken line, considering the line to be a single metrical unit despite the fact that it straddles a stanza break. To record these cases, mark the end of the first half-line with `\end{stanza}` as usual. But instead of opening the next stanza with `\begin{stanza}` issue `\stanzalinestraddle` instead. This will make sure that the line counter counts the straddling line as only one line, despite the stanza break. `\stanzalinestraddle` is usually used with `\versephantom{}`.

`rightflushverse`

`\rightversebegin`

By default, `poemscol` indents the `runover` portion of long lines by the amount `\runoverindent` (by default 6 em). It is possible to set verse so that the `runover` portion is flushed to the right margin. To do this, you should put the `\rightflushverse` environment inside the `\poem` environment. And you must mark the beginning of each verse line with `\rightversebegin`. Christian Ebert has reminded me that the `\rightflushverse` environment must be issued *inside* the `poem` environment. Otherwise it simply flushes every line to the right.

It is rather clumsy to need a special environment for verse with right flushed `runover`. I plan to provide a command for switching between a verse environment that indents `runover` lines and a verse environment that flushes `runover` lines to the right. I have seen examples of this kind of environment from Markus Kohm and Christian Ebert, but so far I haven't been able to persuade them to play well with `poemscol`.

`\poemlinelabel`

`\poemlinelabel{}` enables crossreferences by line number. To make a line label, issue `\poemlinelabel{text of label}` right after the line to which you wish to refer, where "text of label" is some distinctive label you can use for a reference

elsewhere. (You should issue the command *after* the `\verseline` or `\end{stanza}` command, to make sure that the line number will be correct.) To produce the reference, just issue `\ref{text of label}` as usual. (`\poemlinelabel` is just a crudely hacked version of `\label` from L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X.) `\pageref{text of label}` will set the page number of the page on which the label appears.

## 4 Making a table of contents

`\makepoemcontents` I found the normal L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X macros for making tables of contents unsuited to poetry, so I have provided my own. To make a table of contents for your poems, issue `\makepoemcontents`. It might seem as though you would want to issue this command in your preamble. In fact it is better, for reasons explained below, to issue it immediately after issuing the `\putpoemcontents`, the command which inputs and typesets a table of contents from a prior run. Information for your table of contents will be written to an external file with the extension `.ctn`. You may need to run your book through L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X twice in order to generate a table of contents, the first time to generate the correct page numbers, and the second time to set the table of contents. (Under some circumstances — if you have an index, for instance — you may need three passes rather than two.) `\makepoemcontents` takes an optional argument, which sets the page number for the table of contents. If your publisher wishes to add some front matter so that the contents will appear on page vii, you should issue `\makepoemcontents{7}`.

All of the commands that generate lines in the table of contents are somewhat messy and somewhat rigid, but you can modify them if you wish. Lines in the table of contents usually include an indent (how much of one depends upon what the entry is — whether it is a volume title, a poem title, or something else), then the title itself. If the entry is for a poem, for a section of a poem, or for a section of a poetic sequence, a slash follows the title, followed by the page number. If you wish to give *all* your entries a different look altogether, modify the `\c@ntentsinfo` macro below (see section 20.13.1, page 71). To change the appearance of a *particular* kind of entry (for all sequences of poems, for instance), go to the definition of the title of that kind of entry (e.g. `\sequencetitle`) below, find the line where it calls the `\c@ntentsinfo` macro, and change the arguments to that macro to suit you.

`\setcontentsleaders` By default the title and the page are separated by a slash (actually by `~/~`). If you wish to change this, say to put dot leaders in instead, issue what you wish to use as the argument to `\setcontentsleaders`, as for instance `\setcontentsleaders{\poemdotfill}`, which will flush the number to the right margin, and insert leading dots up to the number.

`\putpoemcontents` `\putpoemcontents` will input the table of contents file if it exists, and complain on your log file if it does not. Because the table of contents uses a special page style and special fonts `\putpoemcontents` restores the default fancy page style once it has input the contents, and restores `\normalfont` as well. Be sure to reset the style of page numbering (from `\pagenumbering{roman}` to `\pagenumbering{arabic}`) after issuing `\putpoemcontents`, since when you read in the external file created

by `\makepoemcontents` the page numbering will be set to roman. The command `\resetpagestyle` (which is called by `\putpoemcontents`) will reset the fancy page style to that used in the main body of the volume, but it won't change the page numbering to arabic, in case there is some frontmatter between the contents and the main text, so you should be sure to do so yourself. If you neglect to issue `\pagenumbering{arabic}` before you begin to get to your poems your page numbering will remain in roman numerals. The notes sections use the page numbers from the poem to construct running headers of the form "Notes to pp. xx-yy." If those numbers are roman numerals rather than arabic ones, `poemscol` will not recognize them as numbers, and you will get the infamous "Missing Number" error that puzzles so many users of L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X.

Because `\putpoemcontents` uses the table of contents file from a prior run, you should issue `\putpoemcontents` *before* issuing `\makepoemcontents`. That sounds counterintuitive. But remember that `\putpoemcontents` will read in the contents file you made on a previous run, and `\makepoemcontents` will over-write that file and start a new one. You should issue `\makepoemcontents` just *after* issuing `\putpoemcontents`.

#### 4.1 Contents entries for notes sections and the index

- `\putpoemindex` Remember that if you are making an index of titles and first lines you may need to run your file through L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X after running `MakeIndex`, to put the entry for the index into your table of contents. `\putpoemindex` inputs the formatted index, and adds an entry for it into the table of contents. Use `\putmultiplepoemindex` if you are making several indices. For instructions about `\putmultiplepoemindex` see section 5.1, p. 15.
- `\puttextnotes`  
`\putemendations`  
`\putexplanatory` `\puttextnotes`, and its siblings `\putemendations` and `\putexplanatory`, like `\putpoemindex`, input the formatted notes sections, and put entries for them into your table of contents. As with `\putpoemindex`, you will have to run L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X again to set the table of contents properly. The first run sets a label to find the page number to add to the table of contents, and the second run actually sets the table of contents. (These commands are described below, in section 10.) All of these commands also restore normal hyphenation.
- `\finish` Rather than issuing `\putpoemcontents` in the proper place, and `\puttextnotes` and its siblings in their proper places, you can issue the `\finish` command just after your last poem. `\finish` turns automatic hyphenation back on, closes and reads back in the external files for the emendations, the textual collations, and the explanatory notes, sets the index of first lines and titles, puts the information about these sections in the table of contents, closes the external file for the contents, and reads it back in. One disadvantage of this method is that you print the book with the contents at the end, so when you print it you must retrieve the contents pages and put them in the proper place. I found the convenience worth the hassle, but you might not. This command is deprecated now. But I have retained it, since the few users who gave me their opinions of the matter told me that they preferred to use `\finish` than `\puttextnotes`.

## 5 Making an index of titles and first lines

`\indexingontrue` To set up the Index section of your volume, issue `\indexingontrue` in your preamble. This will create the external file for your index information and send that file the typesetting information for its title. You must process this external file (the .idx file) with `MakeIndex` and run your book through  $\text{\LaTeX}$  again in order to set a properly organized and formatted index. `MakeIndex` sorts the various multi-level “index cards” generated by all of the `\index` commands in your source files. Once you have processed your .idx file with `MakeIndex`, and generated the sorted and formatted .ind file for your book, the `\putpoemindex` command will insert the typeset index where you issue it, and put an entry for your index in your table of contents. You will have to run your file through  $\text{\LaTeX}$  again to make the page number for that entry correct.

`poemscol` sets up a two-column index with a simple running header. (Setting up a two-column index, however, requires that you include the `multicol` package in your `\usepackage{}` list.) To turn indexing off, issue `\global\indexingonfalse`.

Enter the individual index entries in the poems as you normally would for use by `MakeIndex` (say, after each title and first line). One of the nice features of `MakeIndex` is that every entry has two parts, one for specifying the sort key of the entry (or subentry), the other for specifying the font and typesetting information of the entry (or subentry). This enables you to drop all of the initial uses of “the” in titles for sorting purposes, while still including the “the” in the title. It also enables you to distinguish titles from first lines (by italicizing them), and to include typesetting information (such as italicization) in titles or first lines without messing up their sort order.

### 5.1 Making Multiple Indices

`poemscol` can work with `splitindex` to generate more than one index. You might, for instance, wish a separate index of titles and index of first lines, or an index of proper names. To do this, call `splitindex` in your list of packages. Then, in your preamble, declare the indices you are planning to use, e.g. `\newindex[Index of Titles]{idx}` `\newindex[Index of First Lines]{fir}` `\newindex[Onomastic Index]{ono}`. The second argument is the “shortcut” defined by `splitindex`, and will be used to mark index entries in your text (see below), and as the extension for the external index files used by `MakeIndex`.

Then mark up individual entries. Some entries (in the example above, the “Index of Titles” examples) can be marked up with `\index` just as if you were using only one index. Entries for other indices should be marked using the `\sindex` command from `splitindex`, as follows

```
\sindex[fir]{Of Man's first disobedience and the fruit}
```

where the first argument is the “shortcut” and the second is the index entry. If you are loading `splitindex` with the `split` option, the different types of index entry will be sent to separate output streams, which each must be processed separately with

MakeIndex. T<sub>E</sub>X has only a limited number of such output streams, however, so it is probably wiser not to choose that option, but to use `splitindex.tex`, `splitindex.pl`, or one of the other means provided with the `splitindex` package to break up the index into the separate parts, each of which must be processed with MakeIndex separately.

To include the indices, and to add entries for them to the table of contents, issue `\putmultiplepoemindex` for each one. `\putmultiplepoemindex` takes four arguments, which are: 1. The three letter “shortcut” used by `\splitindex`, 2. The title of the Index on its first page, 3. The running header for that index section, and 4. The name of the section as you wish it to appear in the Table of Contents. So, for instance

```
\putmultiplepoemindex{fir}{INDEX OF FIRST LINES}{Index of First
Lines}{First Line Index}
```

includes an index with shortcut “fir,” title “INDEX OF FIRST LINES,” running header “Index of First Lines,” and contents entry “First Line Index.”

## 6 Collections with multiple volumes

`\volumetitlepage` The `\volumetitlepage` environment is an environment for divider pages in collections made up of several volumes. Volume title pages will always appear on recto pages. `poemscol` will automatically create a blank verso page preceding the volume title page if it necessary. The `\maintitlepage` environment is for the title page of the whole book. The main title page will also automatically always be on a recto page. These divider pages have special page styles, with no page numbers and no running headers.

`\wholebooktitle` `\wholebooktitle{}` is for the title of the entire collection. `\volumetitle{}` is for the title of an individual volume within a Collected Poems. `\volumetitlefirstline` The `\volumetitlefirstline{}`, `\volumetitlemiddleline{}`, and `\volumetitlelastline` `\volumetitlelastline{}` macros are for multi-line titles of volumes gathered into the collection. (Use these last commands if you want to specify how a long title is broken up both in the text and in the table of contents. `poemscol` will break up long titles on its own anyway if you don’t specify how to break them up, but you might not be happy with how it breaks up the lines.) `\volumesubtitle{}` is for setting the subtitle to a volume. `\volumesectiontitle{}` is for setting the title of a section of a volume. In addition to setting the text in the body of your edition, these commands send the title (and the formatting information about it) to the table of contents file and to the textnotes file.

`\volumeepigraph` `\volumeepigraph{}` and `\volumeattribution{}` are for epigraphs and attributions on the divider pages. `\volumeheader{}` or `\rightheadertitle{}` is the right running header for that volume (except for divider pages, the table of contents, the notes sections, and other special cases). Normally that is just the name of the particular volume. `\leftheadertitle{}` is the left running header for the entire book (except for divider pages, the table of contents, the notes sections, and other special cases). Normally that is the name of the entire book.



## 7 Recording textual notes

### 7.1 Setup for sections for textual notes, emendations, and explanatory notes.

`\makeemendations` To collect emendations, issue `\makeemendations` in your preamble. To collect textual collations, issue `\maketextnotes` in your preamble. To collect explanatory notes, issue `\makeexplanatorynotes` in your preamble. If you issue these commands, `poemscol` puts all of the emendations, textual collations, and explanatory notes in the backmatter of your volume. `poemscol` opens external files for emendations, textual collations, and explanatory notes (with extensions `.emd`, `.ent`, and `.enx` respectively), and reads them back in at the place you specify with `\puttextnotes`, `\putexplanatory`, or `\putemendations`, or at the end (if you use the `\finish` command). These commands also send to the external files the commands for typesetting the title of each section (e.g. Explanatory Notes) and for modifying the running headers of the notes sections to `xx-yy` format (e.g. “Explanatory Notes to pp. 55–7”).

If you wish to use multi-level footnotes rather than endnotes, you do not need to issue `\maketextnotes` or its relatives (but you should of course issue `\textnotesatfoot` or its relatives). You can mix footnotes or endnotes as you wish. You may, for instance, wish to set explanatory notes as footnotes, and textual notes and emendations as endnotes. Instructions for setting up `poemscol` to make footnotes are in section 9 below.

In end note sections `poemscol` opens an entry (headed with the title and page of the poem in the text) in the textual notes section for every poem (since, minimally, you want to include information about the variants and copy text of the poem), but only opens entries in the emendations or explanatory notes sections if you actually have emendations or explanatory notes on that poem.

The notes for each poem are set in a block paragraph, with a new paragraph for every `\poemtitle` command, and the line counter for the notes is reset to 1 with every `\begin{poem}`. (For long poems in books or cantos, it would be wise to use `\poemtitle` for the canto names or numbers, setting the poem title in some other way, perhaps with `\volumetitle` described above.)

`\iftextnotessinglepar` You may, particularly if you are annotating long poems, wish each note to appear in its own paragraph rather than in a block paragraph with the other notes to that poem. To do this, you need to set the relevant boolean. Issue `\textnotessinglepartrue` `\emendationssinglepartrue` or `\explanationssinglepartrue` to give each such note a separate paragraph.

By default, notes are set in single columns. To set them in two column mode, set the relevant booleans to true, e.g. `\textnotestwocoltrue`.

You may not wish to have the poem’s page number and title appear in the notes. To turn off the appearance of the page number in the notes, issue `\putpagenumberinnotesfalse`. You may also not wish to put the poem’s title in the notes. To turn off the appearance of the poem’s title in the notes, issue `\puttitleinnotesfalse`.

`\contentsendnotesindent` You can control the appearance of the entry for endnote sections in the ta  
`\contentsendnotesfont`

ble of contents by changing the definition of `\contentsendnotesindent` (set by default to `\contentsindentone`) or `\contentsendnotesfont` (set by default to `\contentspoemtitlefont`).

## 7.2 Textual notes of various kinds

<code>\sources</code>	To record information about the copy text, editions and publication history of individual poems, or any information not tied to specific lines in the poem, you should place that information in the argument to the <code>\sources{}</code> macro. Typically, you should issue this macro after you have issued <code>\poemtitle{}</code> and before you issue <code>\begin{poem}</code> . If you wish to send information to the textual notes file (such as to force a page break), you can do so by using <code>\sources{}</code> . You can send typesetting information to other sections by using <code>\literalemend{}</code> , <code>\literalexplain{}</code> , or <code>\literalcontents{}</code> . There is also a <code>\literaltextnote{}</code> command, which is equivalent to <code>\sources{}</code> .
<code>\textnote</code>	<code>\textnote{}</code> is used to capture variants and tie them to the correct line number. You don't have to count line numbers. <code>poemscol</code> keeps track of them for you. Issue <code>\textnote{}</code> immediately after the <code>\verseline</code> command which marks the ending of the line you wish to comment upon. Put the text of your note (which may be simply the recording of a variant in standard notation) into the argument of the macro. You should put both the lemma and the variants or comment in the argument to the <code>\textnote{}</code> macro. To put the <code>~</code> glyph in your note (used for recording places where the variant and the copy text have the same word, as for instance when recording a variation of punctuation) use <code>\sameword</code> . To put the <code>^</code> glyph into your text (used for recording places where a punctuation mark is missing in a variant), use <code>\missingpunct</code> .
<code>\sameword</code>	
<code>\missingpunct</code>	
<code>\emendation</code>	
<code>\explanatory</code>	

For notes that refer to ranges of lines, `\textnote`, `\emendation`, and `\explanatory` have an optional argument, which records how many lines the note refers to. There are two ways of using this argument. The grubby but simple way is simply to put into the argument the number of lines it refers to. If, for instance, you issue `\textnote[4]{lemma rest of note}`, `poemscol`, rather than printing merely the number of the line which closed just before you issued `\textnote`, will print a line range, beginning at that line, and ending at the fourth line after it. If that `\textnote` were issued after line 214, this is to say, the output in the textual notes would be: 214–218: lemma] rest of note.

It seems clumsy to count the lines referred to by a note, especially since you don't have to count lines to set where the note begins. A more sophisticated way, and one which involves no counting, is to make a unique poem line label for the last line of the range by issuing `\poemlinelabel{some unique label}` just after the `\verseline` or `\end{stanza}` that ends the range. (To use `\poemlinelabel` see section 3.3.) Then, back after the `\verseline` or `\end{stanza}` command that closes the first line of the range, put the text of the label into the optional argument of `\textnote` as follows: `\textnote[some unique label]{lemma]rest of note}`. This is the preferred method. The line-counting method is deprecated, but retained for backwards compatibility with earlier versions. If you use the label method, you will have to

run your file through L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X twice, once to define the labels, and once to set the text.

Overlapping lemmas, or lemmas that include stanza breaks, do not pose any difficulties for `poemscol`.

`\emendation{}` and `\explanatory{}` are used exactly as `\textnote{}` is. Issue the emendation or the explanatory note as the argument to the command. Place the command immediately after the `\verseline` that concludes the line to which it is a comment. These commands also can take optional arguments to specify line ranges.

If you quote verse *within* a textual note, an explanatory note, or an emendation, you may want to use the normal L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X markup for verse for that quotation, rather than the special markup for `poemscol`. `poemscol` will not complain about this.

If a textual note *ends* with a quotation in verse, you should follow the `\textnote{}` entry with `\quotedversecorrectiontextnote`. I found that if I quoted verse in the note sections a dirty trick I used to send the notes to the external files would cause the following notes on that poem in the notes sections to be set in a new paragraph. (This is of course not a problem if the quoted verse is the last thing in the notes to that poem, since the next poem will open a new paragraph in the notes anyway. It is also not a problem if more of the individual `textnote` follows the verse. It's only a problem if the last thing in the note is quoted verse, and the note is not the last one on that poem.) The command should set it flush as it is, but I have found odd cases I can't understand in which that doesn't work, so the command has an optional argument, which should be the additional length you need to adjust the next line by to make it flush. The default is `Opt`. `\quotedversecorrectionexplanatory` and `\quotedversecorrectionemendation` should follow explanatory notes or emendations that end with snippets of verse. These three commands are an embarrassing kludge on my part. They simply send commands to the relevant note sections that prohibit opening a new paragraph. You should issue this command in the main text right after the close of the `textnote` (not in the text of the `textnote` itself).

`\accidental` `\accidental{}` behaves exactly like `\textnote{}`. If you wish to distinguish between accidentals and substantives, this command provides a way of doing so. If you wish to exclude accidentals from your textual notes, issue `\global\includeaccidentalsfalse` in your preamble. Accidentals are included by default, but if you issue `\includeaccidentalstrue` in your preamble, you will remind yourself of that fact.

`poemscol` does not provide for a separate backmatter section for accidentals, but it would be trivial to construct one, using `\definewnotetype`, described in section 8 below. Use `\definewnotetype` to create a command called `\newaccidental`, then issue `\let\accidental=\newaccidental`.

If you wish to exclude accidentals from your printed output, but to mark them in your source files, so that your published collation consists only of substantives, issue `\global\includeaccidentalsfalse` in your preamble. Many publishers are reluctant to publish accidentals, believing that they are, well, less substantive than substantives. Using the `\accidental{}` command allows you to exclude acciden-

tals from the published version should your publisher insist, while preserving the information about them should the publisher's mind change. In the very worst case, if you have marked all the accidentals in this way you can still produce a list of accidentals for later use, and other scholars can search for accidentals in your source files simply by searching for the string `\accidental`.

`\tsvariant`  
`\tsentry`

Some publishers may turn up their noses at typescript or manuscript variants in just the way they turn up their noses at accidentals. If you wish to distinguish between published variants and typescript, manuscript, or galley variants, `\tsvariant` (for a whole note) and `\tsentry` (for a typescript entry in a list of variants in a textual note that includes other kinds of variant) provide ways of doing so. By default, typescript variants are included. To exclude typescript variants, issue `\global\includetypescriptsfalse` in your preamble. You can issue `\global\includetypescriptstrue` in your preamble, to remind yourself that you are including typescript variants. In that (default) case `\tsvariant{}` will behave exactly like `\textnote{}`, and entries in other notes marked with `\tsentry` will be included in your output.

Here is how to use `\tsentry`: if you wish to include typescript entries in a single note including those entries in a list with variants from other published versions (as for instance when a comma appears in a typescript but only in the second edition of the published poem), simply issue `\textnote{}` as usual, marking the relevant variant in the list of variants with the `\tsentry{}` macro. If typescript variants are excluded, the typescript entry will also be excluded.

Here is a typical use of the `\tsentry{}` command:

```
Of moonlit desert. A stallion, white and flashing, slips,\verseline
\textnote{Of moonlit] Of the moonlit {\em NY\}\tsentry{, SP85TS
(revised in black pen to SP85))}}
```

Notice that since the `\tsentry{}` comes in the middle of the list, it begins with a comma. You might expect an `\unskip` command before the comma, to prevent L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X from adding white space before the comma. `poemscol` automatically provides the `\unskip` if the entry starts with a comma or a semicolon.

You can mark individual variants with `\tsentry{}` in the arguments to the `\explanatory{}` and `\emendation{}` commands as well, and `\tsentry{}` will also behave normally in any endnote or footnote section you define using `\definewnotetype`.

`poemscol` does not provide for a separate backmatter section for typescript variants, but it would be trivial to construct one, again using `\definewnotetype`. To do this, you would also have to copy all of the emendations, explanatory notes, and textual notes which have a `\tsentry` in their arguments, and add `\tsvariant{}` commands in those places. For information about `\definewnotetype` see section 8.

## 8 Creating new kinds of endnote

`\definewnotetype` The `\definewnotetype` macro can be used to create new kinds of endnote, in

case the kinds `poemscol` defined are not enough. `\definewnotetype` takes five arguments. They are

1. A base name used to construct
  - some `\if` variables (e.g. `\ifmynoteson` to see whether you are collecting “mynotes”, `\ifnomynoteyet` to see whether you have written a “mynote” for a particular poem yet, `\ifmynotestwocol` to set the notes in two column mode, and `\ifmynotesinglepar` to set the notes in one paragraph per note form, rather than in block paragraphs). `poemscol` will only open an entry for a poem in the “mynotes” section if there actually is a “mynote” on that poem. Note that every `\if` that refers to a section is plural (`\ifmynoteson`, `\ifmynotestwocol`, `\ifmynotesinglepar`) and that every `\if` that refers to a singular note is singular (`\ifnomynoteyet`).
  - The name for the output channel for writing the notes to the appropriate external file. This name will always be plural.
  - The name for the “literal” command for writing literal, unexpanded text on the file (as `\literaltextnote{}` does on the `textnotes` file), and for the note command that sends the actual textual note (line number and all) to the section (e.g. `\mynote{}`), also the command to write notes in line-numbered prose (e.g. `\prosemynote{ }{ }`) or prose numbered by paragraph and sentence (e.g. `\pmmynote{ }`). These commands will always be singular.
  - The name of the `\put` command (e.g. `\putmynotes`) which closes the external file for the notes section, reads it back in to your document, and adds an entry in the table of contents for that notes section. This command will always be plural.
  - The name of the `\margref` command for putting a marginal mark next to a line giving the page number in the apparatus where a note is to be found (e.g. `\margrefmynote`)
2. The extension for the external file which will hold the notes as you generate them. “Emendations” for instance, are written to an external file called `\jobname.emd`. The file name will always be `\jobname`, and the different species of endnotes will all have distinctive extensions. (`\jobname` is a macro that always expands to the name of your top level source file. If, for instance, I am setting running a file called “myfile.tex” through L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X `\jobname.emd` translates to “myfile.emd.”)
3. The title of the notes section as you wish it to appear in the running header (e.g. “Emendations”).
4. The title of the notes section as you wish it to appear on the first page of the notes section (e.g. “EMENDATIONS”).
5. The title of the notes section as you wish it to appear in the table of contents.

So, for instance,

```
\definewnotetype{xyznote}{xyz}{Xyznotes to}{XYZNOTES}{Xyznotes}
```

creates the booleans `\ifxyznoteson`, `\ifnoxyznoteyet`, and `\ifxyznotessinglepar`, the commands `\xyznote`, `\literalxyznote`, `\prosexyznote`, `\pmxyznote`, and `\putxyznotes` (and, although you don't ever have to use it explicitly, `\firstxyznote`) the output channel `xyznotes`, the external file `\jobname.xyz`, an entry in the contents for “Xyznotes”, and an endnotes section with a running header of the form “Xyznotes to pp. xx–yy” and a title XYZNOTES. `\xyznote` takes the same arguments that `\explanatory` does (which is to say, an optional argument for a label for entering line ranges, and an argument for the lemma and the comment). There won't be an entry for a poem in the “Xyznotes” endnotes section unless there actually is an `xyznote` for the poem. `\prosexyznote` takes the same arguments `\prosexplanatory` does (which is to say, an optional argument for a label for entering line ranges, an argument for a label to capture the line number of the first line, and an argument for the lemma and the comment). `\pmxyznote` behaves exactly like `\pmexplanatory`.

## 9 Multi-level footnotes

`poemscol` will set multiple levels of footnotes in block paragraphs, separating each level with a rule. To enable this feature, call the `manyfoot` package as follows in your preamble: `\usepackage[ruled,para*]{manyfoot}`.

To set your textual notes as footnotes, issue `\textnotesatfoot` in your preamble. If you do this, `poemscol` will actually create two sets of footnotes for `textnotes`, one for those that are called with `\textnote`, which will produce an unindented block of notes, and one for those that are called with `\sources`, which will produce individual indented paragraphs, opening a new paragraph with every note. `\sources` notes often have several paragraphs, so they are inappropriate for block-paragraph or “para” mode, and because those paragraphs are often in fact prose paragraphs, rather than blocks of notations, they are indented, so that they will be read as prose. To set your emendations as footnotes, issue `\emendationsatfoot` in your preamble. These notes will be set by default as block paragraphs. If you have multiple-paragraph notes in your emendations, you should redefine these notes to set plain rather than para style notes. (See the next paragraph for how to do this.) To set your explanatory notes as footnotes, issue `\explanationsatfoot`. These notes will also, by default, be plain style notes, with one indented paragraph per note. You do not need to issue `\maketextnotes`, `\makeemendations` or `\makeexplanatorynotes` if you set those notes as footnotes. If you use `\literaltextnote` anywhere in your file, however, you will lose the text it would have put in your `textnotes`, since `\literaltext` just writes its argument onto the external file for textual notes.

To change the style of your footnotes between plain and para modes, globally change the values some of the following booleans. `\ifsourcesfootnotespara`, obviously, is true if footnotes from the `\sources` command are set in “para” mode (default is false). `\iftextfootnotespara` is true if footnotes from `\textnote` are set in “para” mode (default is true). `\ifemendationfootnotespara`, or `\ifexplanfootnotespara` are the booleans which set the style of footnotes from `\emendation` and `\explanatory` respectively. By default, footnotes from `\emendation` are set in “para” mode, and footnotes from `\explanatory` are set in “plain” mode. To change explanatory footnotes from plain to para mode, for instance, issue `\global\explanfootnotesparatrue`. Counterintuitive as it sounds, you must issue this *before* issuing `\textnotesatfoot` (or the command for whichever other kind of note you are wishing to change the appearance of).

When `\sources` is defined to send endnotes to the textual notes section, they usually appear immediately underneath the title of the volume or poem they comment upon. If you are having `\sources` output footnotes, it would be a good idea to open the note with the title of the volume or poem it is a comment upon, in case there is more than one poem on the page.

When note classes are set as footnotes, the symbol which marks cases in which a page turn falls on a stanza break will be set *beneath* the footnotes. This is a consequence of the way `poemscol` uses the `\mark` mechanism to keep track of these cases, so I have not figured out how to change it. But it may well be more of an idiosyncrasy than a bug, particularly if the symbol is changed from `*` to something like “stanza break at page turn.”

To create a new level of footnote, you must first declare it to make it known to `manyfoot`, which requires each level of footnote to be given a unique suffix (usually a capital letter of the alphabet). You can declare a new footnote level called `\footnoteE{}` for instance, by issuing `\DeclareNewFootnote[para]{E}`. You will want notes which don’t put a mark in the body of the text, and begin with the line number or range of line numbers of the lemma. To define a footnote called `\mynote{}`, first declare new footnote `\footnoteE` (A, B, C and D are reserved for sources, textual notes, emendations, and explanatory notes, respectively). Then issue `\newcommand{\mynote}[2][0]{\setlemmarange{#1}\FootnotetextE{\citerange}{#2}\resetlemmacounters}` (`\setlemmarange`, `\citerange`, and `\resetlemmacounters` enable your footnote to handle line ranges in the lemma.) If a `\mynote` refers to a range of lines, you can issue the same kinds of optional argument that are used with `\textnote`.

## 10 Pulling it all together

`\testforauxonfirstrun` If you don’t want to listen to L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X complain about missing references during your first run, issue `\testforauxonfirstrun`, which won’t let `\finish`, `\putexplanatory`, `\puttextnotes`, or `\putemendations` run unless there is an `.aux` file for a previous run. *Be sure to issue this command before issuing `\begin{document}`, since that reads in the existing `.aux` file, and overwrites it with a new one.*

`\putemendations` This macro closes the external file for emendations and reads it in. It also puts an entry for the emendations section into your table of contents. After `\putemendations` has read in the external file for emendations, you will need to run your file through L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X again, to put the correct page number in the table of contents file.

`\puttextnotes` `\puttextnotes` and `\putexplanatory` do the same thing for the textual notes and for the explanatory notes.

`\putexplanatory` All of these last three commands restore normal hyphenation. Since all three are printed with the `\small` font size, the hyphen character is defined only for that size. This should not create other issues, however, because the commands that prohibit hyphenation in the `poem` environment (and in the `contentsentry` environment) are local to those environments, so the restoration of the hyphen character may be redundant.

`\putpoemindex` `\putpoemindex` reads in the index at this point, and adds an entry for the index to external file for the table of contents.

`\putmultiplepoemindex` If you are generating several indices using `splitindex` `\putmultiplepoemindex` reads in one of them at this point. For instructions about this command, see section 5.1, p. 15.

`\finish` The `\finish` macro is deprecated but still available. It is designed to be placed just before `\end{document}` (which, in fact, it replaces — but you should still put an `\end{document}` at the end of your document for form’s sake). `\finish` closes the external files for the three notes sections and reads them back into the document (turning the automatic hyphenation back on for these sections). It adds entries to the table of contents file for the notes sections. It reads in the formatted index file (which you have made from your raw .idx file using MakeIndex between L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X runs) and adds an entry for the index to the table of contents. Then it closes the external file for the table of contents and reads that in (putting it at the end of the document, as I explained before). Then it adds a page explaining that the symbol (by default \*) at the bottom of certain pages marks places where a stanza break and a page break coincide. If you have an editor’s introduction preceding your notes section, or a list of abbreviations, you may wish to consult the `\finish` macro for suggestions about how to add the lines to read those files in and add entries for them in the table of contents.

## 11 Special cases

### 11.1 Epigraphs, attributions etc.

`\epigraph` `\epigraph`, `\headnote`, `\attribution`, and `\poemdedication` set their arguments as epigraphs, headnotes, attributions, or dedications. If you have dedications, epigraphs, or attributions on the divider pages of editions that combine several volumes of poetry, use `\volumededication{}`, `\volumeepigraph{}`, and `\volumeattribution{}`. You can adjust the left and right margins of epigraphs by changing the values of `\epigraphquotelleftmargin` or `\epigraphquoterightmargin`



## 11.2 Inset prose quotations

`\saveverselinenumber`  
`\restoreverselinenumber`

Sometimes you will have inset prose passages, but you will not wish to start the line numbering over after the passage. The way to set this is to issue `\end{stanza}` at the end of the stanza before the prose insert. Then issue `\saveverselinenumber`. Then issue `\end{poem}`. Insert the prose quotation (perhaps followed by `\attribution{}`). Then issue `\begin{poem}` followed by `\restoreverselinenumber` and `\begin{stanza}`. Then begin entering the rest of the poem as usual. Longer, independent prose sections (such as the author's preface or prose poems) require different handling. To provide line numbers and notes for such prose sections, see section 13.

## 11.3 Multiline poem titles

`\poemtitlefirstline`  
`\poemtitlemiddleline`  
`\poemtitlelastline`  
`\poemtitlenocontents`  
`\poemtitlebaretitle`

Very long titles present special problems. In the first place, they require special provisions to make sure that page breaks don't happen in the middle of a title, or immediately after a title. In the second place, they raise questions about how the author wished to break them up over several lines. If you think it might matter, these macros make it possible for you to ensure that long titles are broken in exactly the same way in your text and in your table of contents. (I didn't pursue this question for titles in notes sections, and in notes sections these commands simply concatenate a long title.)

If you wish to set the titles differently in the text and in the contents, you can set the title in the text and notes with `\poemtitlenocontents{}` and send a differently formatted entry to the table of contents file using `\literalcontents{}`. (Remember that you will have to send not only the title of the poem to the contents, but also the other formatting information, such as the indentation, the slash, and the label for the page number.) `\poemtitlebaretitle{}` simply sets the title in the text, enabling you to use `\literalcontents{}` and `literaltextnotes{}` to produce whatever effect you wish.

Alternatively, you can just let `poemscol` handle the long titles by itself. If you are pretty sure that the author did not care how long titles were broken up, this would probably be the best thing to do. Remember also that if `poemscol` breaks a title across two lines, you can always force it not break the line by using enclosing the argument to `\poemtitle{}` in `\hbox{}`. You may get a complaint on your log file about an overfull `\hbox` if you do this, however.

## 11.4 Italicized poem titles and empty poem titles

Titles with italics or other special formatting posed special problems in earlier versions (before version 1.7) since the typesetting commands gummed up how I passed parameters around that I was unable to solve using `\protect`. All of these commands are obsolete now, but are retained for backward compatibility.

`\poemtitleitalic`

`\poemtitleitalic{ }{ }` takes two arguments. The first is the title of the poem with the italics (or small capitals or international characters or what have you), for typesetting, and the second is the title without the commands, for cross reference

purposes. (Actually, now that `poemscol` no longer needs to treat italics in titles in a different way, it can be anything you want, since the second argument is discarded.)

`\poemtitlenotitle` `\poemtitlenotitle{}`, with its paradoxical name, is for poems without formal titles. Usually such poems are referred to by their first lines. This macro does not produce a title in the text, but sets its argument in the table of contents and in the notes. Usually you use the first line as the moral equivalent of a title.

`\poemtitlenotitleitalic` `\poemtitlenotitleitalic{}{}`, with its even more paradoxical name, is for poems without formal titles but with italicized words in their first lines. `\poemtitlenotitleitalic{}{}` takes two arguments. The first is the first line with the italics (for typesetting purposes), and the second is the first line without the italics (for crossreference purposes). This command is obsolete now that italics in titles no longer require special handling, but is retained for backwards compatibility.

## 11.5 Poems in sections

`\poemsectiontitle` `\poemsectiontitle{}` and `\poemsubsectiontitle{}`, as their names imply, are for the titles of sections or subsections of poems that have them. `\poemfirstsectiontitle` is for the first section of a poem with many sections. (It differs from `\poemsectiontitle` in that it tries to make it harder for a page break to separate the title of a poem from the title of its first section.) `\poemsectiontitlefirstline{}`, `\poemsectiontitlemiddleline`, `\poemsectiontitlelastline{}`, `\poemsectiontitlenocontents{}`, and `\poemsectiontitlebaretitle{}`, as their titles imply, are used for special cases such as long section titles, if you wish to specify explicitly how the title is to be broken up in the text and in the table of contents. You can construct variants of these macros for dealing with special cases I didn't anticipate by using `\poemsectiontitlebaretitle{}` and `\literalcontents{}` and its siblings.

## 11.6 Poetic sequences

`\sequencetitle` Sequences of related poems, perhaps with an over-title, demand special handling in the text, in the notes sections, and in the table of contents. (A moment's thought will show that they are different in some ways from poems in sections. For one thing, a sequence manifests a different relationship between part and whole than a poem in sections does, and often provides stronger experiences of momentary closure between sections.) `\sequencetitle{}` sets the title of the sequence, and `\sequencesectiontitle{}` sets the titles of the sections of the sequence. `\sequencefirstsectiontitle{}` gives a little more vertical space between the main title and the first section title than `\sequencesectiontitle{}` gives between adjacent sections later on in the sequence (since the over-title for the sequence is in larger type) and adjusts the page breaking penalties to reflect the fact that such titles should not occur near the bottom of a page, since there should be no page break between the sequence title and the title of the first section of the sequence (although page breaks are permissible, indeed even slightly favored,

between later sections). There should also never be a page break between a section title and the first or second line of the section. The penalties `poemscol` sets should take care of these automatically, but you may still have cases which require you to specify a page break with `\pagebreak` or `\newpage`. There are a host of other commands, all with self-explanatory titles, that deal with some special situations that arise in setting the elements of poetic sequences, such as cases where you wish to specify how long titles will be broken up into lines, or where you wish no entry to be made for the section in the table of contents or in the notes sections. These macros don't of course exhaust the dizzying possibilities, but from them you can construct whatever other macros you may need.

Here is a list of all of the defined title commands.

- Macros for Poem titles

- `\poemtitle`
- `\poemtitlefirstline`
- `\poemtitlemiddleline`
- `\poemtitlelastline`
- `\poemtitlenotitle`
- `\poemtitlenocontents`
- `\poemtitlebaretitle`
- `\poemsubtitle`

- Poems in Sections

- `\poemsectiontitle`
- `\poemsectiontitlefirstline`
- `\poemsectiontitlemiddleline`
- `\poemsectiontitlelastline`
- `\poemsectiontitlenocontents`
- `\poemsectiontitlebaretitle`
- `\poemfirstsectiontitle`
- `\poemfirstsectiontitlebaretitle`
- `\poemsubsectiontitle`

- Sequence Titles

- `\sequencetitle`
- `\sequencetitlefirstline`
- `\sequencetitlemiddleline`
- `\sequencetitlelastline`
- `\sequencetitlenotes`

- Sequence Sections

- `\sequencesectiontitle`
- `\sequencesectiontitlenocontents`
- `\sequencesectiontitlenonotes`
- `\sequencesectiontitlebaretitle`
- `\sequencesectiontitlefirstline`
- `\sequencesectiontitlemiddleline`
- `\sequencesectiontitlelastline`
- `\sequencefirstsectiontitle`
- `\sequencefirstsectiontitlenocontents`
- `\sequencefirstsectiontitlenonotes`
- `\sequencefirstsectiontitlefirstline`
- `\sequencefirstsectiontitlemiddleline`
- `\sequencefirstsectiontitlelastline`
- `\sequencesectionsubsubtitle`

- Sequence Subsections

- `\sequencesubsectiontitle`
- `\sequencesubsectiontitlenocontents`
- `\sequencefirstsubsectiontitle`
- `\sequencefirstsubsectiontitlenocontents`
- `\sequencesubsectiontitlefirstline`
- `\sequencesubsectiontitlemiddleline`
- `\sequencesubsectiontitlelastline`
- `\sequencefirstsubsectiontitlefirstline`
- `\sequencefirstsubsectiontitlemiddleline`
- `\sequencefirstsubsectiontitlelastline`
- `\sequencesubsubsectiontitle`
- `\sequencesubsubsectiontitlenocontents`
- `\sequencefirstsubsubsectiontitlenocontents`

## 11.7 Customizing titles

`poemscol` provides a large number of ways of setting titles, but conceivably you may wish to define your own. Here is a template for designing a new kind of title. Suppose you wish to create a kind of title called `\mytitle{}`. It would take one argument, which would be the title itself. The macro defining the `\mytitle` command should call three macros, `\set@p@emtitle`, to set the title in the main text and make the label for use by the contents and notes sections, `\c@ntentsinfo` to set the title in the table of contents, and `\t@xtnotesinfo`, which sets the title in the notes sections. (You should enclose the whole thing between `\makeatletter` and `\makeatother`.)

`\set@p@emtitle` takes six arguments, which are, in order, (1) the title (which, if you are calling this command inside of the definition of `\mytitle` should just be `#1`), (2) commands to be issued before setting the title (minimally, a penalty, such as `\poemtitlepenalty`), (3) the font size in which the title is to be set in the text (such as `\poemtitlefont` or `\large`), (4) any indentation of the title (`\relax` for `\poemtitle`, or `\titleindent` for `\sequencesectiontitle`), (5) commands to be issued after the title is set (such as `\afterpoemtitleskip`) and (6) the amount overrun lines in the title should be indented.

`\c@ntentsinfo` takes four arguments, which are, in order, (1) the title, (2) the indentation of the title in the table of contents (such as `\contentsindentone`), (3), the font size in which the title should be set (such as `\contentspoemtitlefont`) and (4) the amount overrun lines in the table of contents should be indented (such as `\contentsindenttwoamount`).

`\t@xtnotesinfo` takes one argument, the title.

So, for example, to create a new kind of title called `\mytitle` which looks just like `\poemtitle`, issue

```
\makeatletter
\newcommand{\mytitle}[1]{%
\set@p@emtitle{#1}{\poemtitlepenalty}{\poemtitlefont}%
{\relax}{\nobreak\par\nobreak\afterpoemtitleskip\nobreak}{\z@}%
\c@ntentsinfo{#1}{\contentsindentone}{\contentspoemtitlefont}%
{\contentsindenttwoamount}%
\t@xtnotesinfo{#1}%
}
\makeatother
```

(The `\z@` which is the sixth argument to `\set@p@emtitle` above is a constant set to zero. You will also notice that I became completely hysterical on the subject of preventing a page break after a poem title.)

By default, `poemscol` does not indent the overrun portion of titles relative to the first line of the title, but if that first line is indented will set the overrun portions to be indented the same amount. Overrun portions of titles in the table of contents will be indented by one `\contentsindentamount` more than the first line is indented. Both of these behaviors can be changed by changing the arguments to `\set@p@emtitle` or `\c@ntentsinfo`.

If you wish to design a title which might have multiple lines, and you wish to specify how those lines are broken up, you will need to write three macros: one for the first line, one for middle lines, and one for the last lines. (This only matters if you care how the title is broken up. You can choose to let L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X do the breaking if you wish.) Before issuing `\set@p@emtitle` issue `\firstlinesettings`, `\middlelinesettings`, or `\lastlinesettings` (as the case may require). And issue `\restoresinglelinesettings` last of all in each of your three macros. The lines will be broken in the table of contents and in the body of the text in the same way, but will be run in in the notes sections.

`\JHpoemtitle`

In his edition of the poetry of José Maria Heredia, Tilmann Altenberg placed a marker in the margin next to poem titles with a reference to where in the apparatus notes on that poem could be found. To do this, use the `\JHpoemtitle` command. This command takes two arguments: first, the title of the poem, second, the label used by the `\label` command on the page of the notes section to which the title refers. So, you would issue the poem title command this way: `\JHpoemtitle{Los desvelados}{EP_LosDesvelados_AC}`. Up to version 2.49 of `poemscol` you had to be sure to define the label in the notes sections by issuing `\sources{\label{EP_LosDesvelados_AC}}`. This is no longer necessary, and `\JHpoemtitle` defines both the `\label` and the `\pageref`. Instructions are given in section 20.13.4, p. 82 for how to construct similar commands for sequences, sequence sections, and so on.

The following related commands are defined already

- `\JHsequencetitle`,
- `\JHsequencefirstsectiontitle`,
- `\JHsequencesectiontitle`,
- `\JHsequencesubsectiontitle`,
- `\JHpoemsectiontitle`,
- `\JHpoemfirstsectiontitle`,
- `\JHpoemsubtitle`,
- `\JHepigraph`,
- `\JHprosesectiontitle`, and
- `\JHdedication`.

If you are using `\JHpoemtitle` and its siblings, you need to be sure to add `mparhack` to your package list. You can prevent the marginal reference from switching sides on alternate pages by issuing `\@mparswitchfalse` (be sure to put `\makeatletter` and `\makeatother` around this command). You can control the side on which the marginal reference appears with `\normalmarginpar` (to place them on the right) or `\reversemarginpar` (to place them on the left). `\JHpoemtitle` and its siblings place the marginal reference using `\marginpar`.

<code>\setmpargpoemtitle</code>	<code>\setmargpoemtitle{}{}</code> is a more general version of <code>\JHpoemtitle{}{}</code> , with the second argument being any commands you want to be issued while the title is being processed.
<code>\margreftextnote</code>	Another feature of Altenberg's Heredia edition is a marginal mark attached to lines to which text notes refer showing where in the apparatus a comment upon that line is to be found. <code>\margreftextnote</code> sets a label in the textual notes section, and set a marginal note with a page reference to that label. Issue <code>\margreftextnote</code> <i>before</i> issuing the <code>\verseline</code> or <code>\end{stanza}</code> that closes the line to which it refers. (The textual note itself can be an ordinary <code>\textnote</code> , and should be placed, as usual, <i>after</i> the <code>\verseline</code> or <code>\end{stanza}</code> . <code>\margreftextnote</code> generates its own label, so there is no need to make up one yourself. <code>\margreftextnote</code> uses <code>\marginpar</code> rather than <code>\pmclsidepar</code> to set the note, because I had to use <code>\marginpar</code> for <code>\JHpoemtitle</code> and its siblings, and I wanted the whole family of markers to be controlled by the same settings. You use the settings that control the behavior of <code>\marginpar</code> (e.g. <code>\mparswitch</code> and <code>\reversemarginpar</code> ) to control the behavior of these marks. If you define a new endnote type using <code>\definewnotetype</code> , <code>\definewnotetype</code> will also define a new <code>\margref</code> command to go with it.
<code>\setmargrefmarker</code>	Altenberg's edition used a ding from the pifonts collection in the marginal marks made by <code>\margreftextnote</code> and its siblings. I have set the default to <code>\dag</code> , so as not to depend upon yet another style package. You can choose another mark using <code>\setmargrefmarker</code> (e.g. <code>\setmargrefmarker{\ding{228}}</code> ).
<code>\margrefemendation</code>	<code>\margrefemendation</code> is a version of <code>\margreftextnote</code> for emendations.
<code>\margrefexplanatory</code>	<code>\margrefexplanatory</code> is a version of <code>\margreftextnote</code> for explanatory notes.

## 11.8 Quoted Verse

Sometimes you wish to quote verse within verse (as when a speaker in a verse play quotes a poem). The `quotedverse` environment is designed for this contingency.

## 11.9 Visual formatting

`\longpage`  
`\shortpage`

The ideal in L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X is to separate content markup and formatting as completely as possible. In the text itself you simply mark the logical units (a poem, a title, a stanza, a textual note), and a header program like this interprets the meaning of those terms typographically. However, one still winds up having to do some visual formatting. Especially in prose sections, such as in the textual notes, you will sometimes have to enlarge or shrink a page by one line in order to avoid an intractable widow or club line, and when one does so one must be careful to do the same to the other member of the two-page spread of which that page is a part. These commands enable one to wiggle `pagelength` enough to handle these problems. Since verse sections should be set with `\raggedbottom` in effect, the commands are not necessary in verse sections.

## 12 Customizing page geometry

### 12.1 Font sizes, skips, sinks indents, and penalties

poemscol sets the font sizes, but not the font family, of fonts for many common tasks, in order to create a hierarchy of sizes. They can be changed with a `\renewcommand` of the following form, where the first number is the font size in points and the second is the leading:

```
\renewcommand{\volumetitlefont}{\fontsize{18}{23}\selectfont}
```

The following table gives the default values for the fonts. The titles of the fonts give their uses. Backmatterheaderfont is for setting the titles of back matter sections. Sequence section titles use poemtitlefont. Backmattertext font is `\small`, backmatterintrofont is `\normalsize`.

Font	Size	Leading
volumetitlefont	18	23
volumesubtitlefont	14	18
poemtitlefont	14	18
sequencetitlefont	16	20
subsectiontitlefont	12	14.5
backmatterheaderfont	16	20
backmattervolumefont	12	14.5
backmattervolumesubtitlefont	11	13
contentsvolumefont	13	20
contentsvolumesubtitlefont	12	14.5
contentssequencetitlefont	10	14
contentspoemtitlefont	10	14

The following table gives various skips, sinks, penalties, and indentations. The titles of these should be self-explanatory. These should be changed with `\renewcommand` as follows:

```
\newcommand{\volumetitlesink}{\leavevmode\vspace{23.5pt}}
```



<b>Name</b>	<b>Argument</b>	<b>Comment</b>
backmattersink	21.5pt	
backmatterafterheadersink	11pt	
afterpoemtitleskip	<code>\smallskip</code>	
afterpoemskip	<code>\bigskip</code>	
aftersequencetitleskip	<code>\medskip</code>	
stanzaskip	<code>\medskip</code>	Extra skip between stanzas
titleindent	<code>\titleindentamount (1pc)</code>	use <code>\setlength</code> to change
parindent	titleindentamount	
volumetitleshift	volumetitleshiftamount	use <code>\setlength</code> to change
contentsindentone	24pt	
contentsindenttwo	42pt	
contentsindentthree	60pt	
contentsindentfour	72pt	
runoverindentvalue	6em	for runover lines in verse
verseindent	2em	for formally indented lines
notesclubpoempenalty	-300	
notessequenceclubpenalty	-1500	
notesvolumetitlepenalty	-1500	
epigraphquoteleftmargin	1.5em	for epigraphs, attributions, etc.
epigraphquoterightmargin	1.5em	

## 12.2 Page styles

`poemscol` also sets several default page styles, defined below. The main page style is “fancy” (defined below), used for prose frontmatter (such as introductions), the main body of the poetry, and the endnotes sections. “`Volumefirststyle`” is for the first page of a volume of poems. “`Volumetitlestyle`” is for the title page of a volume of poems. The external file for the table of contents redefines “fancy,” so you should issue `\resetpagestyle` after issuing `\putpoemcontents`.

## 12.3 Page geometry and type leading

You have to give geometry the values that suit you. I include the values I used in my own book, just to give you a starting place. Using these numbers out of the box might make your page look strange, since I also used the now obsolete `cropmarks` package, which defined a few other lengths and moved the page box around on the page. Also, the default values for `marginparsep` and `marginparwidth` are different now (18pt and 10pt respectively). With that warning, here is a list of the values I used:

<code>tmargin</code>	33pt
<code>textwidth</code>	318.21pt
<code>textheight</code>	550pt
<code>marginparsep</code>	7pt
<code>marginparwidth</code>	10pt
<code>headheight</code>	15pt
<code>headsep</code>	19pt
<code>footskip</code>	15pt
<code>lmargin</code>	132pt

You can reproduce this geometry by issuing the command `\tightgeometry`.

In my own book I also, strictly to save money, and at the price of some ugliness, changed the definition of `\normalsize` and `\small`, so that the former was 10 pt type on 11 pt leading (rather than 12 pt), and that the latter was 9 pt type on 10 pt leading. You can reproduce this setting by issuing `\tightleading`, although I would advise not doing so unless you are under financial constraints.

## 13 Prose Sections

`poemscol` uses the `lineno` package to make marginal line numbers for prose sections such as the Author’s Introduction, Afterword, Author’s Notes, or such prose interludes or prose poems the volume may include. To control the appearance, placement, and frequency of marginal line numbers in prose sections, you may wish to consult the manual to `lineno`. I have added a minimal user interface to make `lineno` cohere with `poemscol`. You may have to fiddle with the parameters of both `poemscol` and `lineno` to persuade them to set marginal line numbers that look the same way in prose and verse contexts. The default values should work as is.

Line numbers in prose sections are placed using a different `\length` from that used in verse sections. Essentially, verse sections, and prose sections which use paragraph and sentence numbering — see below, in section 14 — place the marginal line numbers using `\marginparsep`. Prose sections which are numbered by line use `\linenumbersep` instead, which is a length defined in the `lineno` package. I have given values for both lengths which seem to place line numbers on the left and on the right side in prose sections roughly where they are placed in verse sections. You can change these values with `\setcounter{countername}{length}`.

`\verselinenumberstoleft` and `\verselinenumberstoright` also place the line numbers to the left or to the right, respectively, in prose sections. If you wish the numbering to appear on a different side in prose contexts you can set the side by issuing `\leftlinenumber` or `\rightlinenumber`. These last are commands from the `lineno` package. The two forms in which line numbers switch sides in prose contexts can’t at the moment be used, because of a clash between how `lineno` handles line numbers that switch sides and the way I pass the line numbers to notes sections. If you have set the verse line numbers to switch sides,

prose line numbers will appear on the right side. I hope soon to find a workaround for this problem.

By default, the line modulo for prose sections is the same as that for verse sections; if you have a line number every 5 lines in verse, you will have the same in prose. You can set the prose line modulo independently with `\setprosemodulo`.

`poemscol` may deal with rather long stretches of prose, but it is not designed to be used for critical editions of extended prose texts, as `EDMAC`, `ledmac`, or `ednotes` are. The method of entering line ranges into notes in prose contexts is something of a hack, and rather a worse one than the one employed in verse contexts, since it involves using two labels for each note, one to capture the line number of the beginning, the other to capture the line number of the end. Other limitations of this method may show up with longer prose extracts.

`\prosesectiontitle` Prose sections may be titled with `\prosesectiontitle{}` which is essentially just `\poemtitle`, or `\prosesectiontitlenotitle`, which is essentially just `\poemtitlenotitle`. (Remember that if you use the latter command, you must specify a “dummy” title to use in the note and contents sections.) They will be formatted in the notes and contents sections as poems are. Alternatively, you can use `\literalcontents` and `\literaltextnotes` to set such titles as you please.

`prosesection` Prose sections should be enclosed in a `prosesection` environment (between `\begin{prosesection}` and `\end{prosesection}`). Entering this environment sets the modulo repeat for line numbering to the same value that prevails in verse contexts, and resets the prose line number to zero. If for some reason you do not wish to reset the line number but continue on from where it left off at the end of the last prose section, use the `prosesectionnoreset` environment instead.

`\setprosemodulo` If you wish to set the modulo repeat for line numbering in prose to some value different for that from verse contexts, issue the new modulo as the argument to `\setprosemodulo{}`.

It is possible, if a prose section is interpolated in the midst of verse, to number the prose and verse continuously. To move from a verse passage to a prose passage, just before the `\end{poem}` at the end of the first verse passage issue `\saveverselinenumber` to save the number of the verse passage. After you issue `\begin{prosesection}` issue `\resetlinenumber[\theverselinenumberscratch]` to apply that number to the prose section. To number continuously while moving from prose to verse is more tricky. One way might be to mark a label at the end of the prose passage with `\proselinelabel{prose end label}` (or some other suitably unique label). This label will record the line number of the last prose line. Pass that value to `\restoreverselinenumber` by issuing `\setcounterfromref{verselinenumberscratch}{prose end label}`. Then issue `\restoreverselinenumber` just after issuing the `\begin{poem}` that restarts the verse again. I would recommend against numbering verse and prose continuously, however, since a verse line and a prose line are different categories of thing, the one being an element of prosody, the other being only an element of typography.

`\proselinelabel` `\proselinelabel` is simply `\linelabel` from `lineno`. I have provided the new name to make it easy to distinguish from `\poemlinelabel`.

`\prosetextnote`      Special versions of `\textnote`, `\emendation` and `\explanatory` are available for use in prose sections. `\prosetextnote`, `\proseemendation`, and `\proseexplanatory` differ from the verse versions in that they each require an extra argument, a unique label to be used in locating the line number for use by the notes commands. If `\maketextnotes`, `\makeemendations`, or `\makeexplanatorynotes` have been issued, the endnotes will be sent to the usual sections, where all the notes from that prose section will be grouped into a paragraph, with the entry headed by the title given by `\prosesectiontitle{}`, just as if that were the title of a poem. `\textnotesatfoot`, `\emendationsatfoot`, and `\explanationsatfoot` will send the notes from prose contexts to the usual footnote levels. Notes commands in prose contexts take three arguments. As in verse sections, in prose sections textnotes, explanatory notes, and emendations have an optional first argument for recording line ranges. As in verse sections, you can record these line ranges either by simply putting in the argument how many lines the lemma will refer to (a deprecated method retained for backward compatibility reasons), or the argument of a `\proselinelabel` command on the last line of the lemma. (The only difference from the verse version here is that you should make the label using the `\proselinelabel` command, rather than with the `\poemlinelabel` command.) The second argument is a label to identify each note uniquely, which is used to find the line number at which the note begins. You will need a different label for every note. The third argument is the text of the note, which should include both the lemma and the rest of the note, as in the notes for verse sections. `\proseemendation[]{}{}` and `\proseexplanatory[]{}{}` are coded the same way. So, if you wished to make a textual note on a passage that begins with “Call me Ishmael.” and ends “a way of driving away the spleen,” you would issue at the point where the note is to occur (at the beginning of the passage):

```

\prosetextnote[a way of driving away the spleen] {Call me Ishmael}
{Call me Ishmael \ldots\ a way of driving away the spleen} text of
textual note}

```

On the last line of the passage to which the note refers you would issue:

```

\proselinelabel{a way of driving away the spleen}.

```

`\prosetsvariant`      You can issue `\sources` and `\tentry` in prose contexts as usual. For typescript variants and accidental variants you need to issue `\prosetsvariant[]{}{}`, `\proseaccidental{}{}`, and `\prosetsaccidental{}{}`. `\prosetsvariant` is entered just as `\prosetextnote[]{}{}` is, with an optional argument (for use with line ranges, as usual), and two mandatory arguments (the first a label to capture the line number, the second the lemma and comment).

`\proseaccidental` and `\prosetsaccidental` take only the two mandatory arguments, since by definition an accidental variant is confined to one line.

One caveat: because the line numbers for notes in prose contexts are generated by a label/ref mechanism, each note will result in a complaint about an undefined reference the first time the file is run through  $\text{\LaTeX}$ . Either run the first pass in quiet mode, or be prepared to ignore a lot of griping until  $\text{\LaTeX}$  has generated the .aux file at the end of the first run.

## 14 Paragraph and Sentence Annotation

Annotating a prose section by sentence number, or by paragraph number and sentence number, has some advantages over annotating it by line number. The principal advantage is that the annotation and reference system can remain stable over multiple editions, even if they are set in different formats. The most familiar of such systems is the chapter and verse system in the Bible, introduced by Archbishop Stephen Langton in the thirteenth century (who divided the Vulgate edition into numbered chapters) and by Robert Estienne in the sixteenth century (who added the verse numbers). Such a form of annotation might be especially useful for medieval prosimetra, a form combining verse and prose. (Hence the commands that follow often begin with `pm`.)

`pmsection` You should put prose marked up for sentence and paragraph annotation in a `pmsection` environment. You do not need to put prose marked up for sentence and paragraph annotation in a `prosesection` environment. That environment is only needed if you are line-numbering prose. You also do not need to load the `lineno` package if you are using the sentence and paragraph system for annotating prose. You might, however, still wish to set the title with `\prosesectiontitle`.

`\setprosebysentence` `\setprosebysentence` sets `poemscol` to number prose by sentence rather than by line number. This command is mostly a placeholder now, used only for setting the value of `\marginparsep` to something better for prose. (`\marginparsep` sets how far the line numbers are from the text block.) `\verselinenumberstoleft`, `\verselinenumberstoright`, and `\verselinenumbersswitch` each pick convenient values for `\marginparsep`. By default these values all line up on the page, but if you change any of them, you may have to use reset `\marginparsep` to some value you will have to find by trial and error, since they each use `\marginparsep` in slightly different ways. You can change `\marginparsep` either by using `\setlength{\marginparsep}{length}` or, better, by using `\renewcommand` to change the setting of `\marginparsep` in `\verselinenumberstoleft` or whatever else you intend to use.

`\pmsentence` Each sentence must begin with `\pmsentence`. `\pmsentence` increments the sentence counter, optionally puts the sentence number in the running text, and optionally puts the sentence number in the margin.

`\runningsentencenumberstrue` sets sentence numbers in the running text. To set sentence numbers in the margin, issue `\marginsentencenumberstrue`. You can issue both, either, or neither of these commands.

`\setpmmodulo` If you are putting sentence numbers in the margin, you need not number every sentence. Indeed, if there is more than one sentence on a line, the numbers will overwrite each other (unless you use the `marn.sty` package, and substitute `\marn` for `\pmclrightsdepar`, `\pmclleftsidepar` or `\pmclsidepar` in the code for `\pmsentence`). You can also avoid overlapping sentence numbers by using `\pmsentencetwo` and its siblings, defined below. You can set the modulo for sentence marginal numbers by issuing `\setpmmodulo{}`.

`\pmsentencetwo` If you know, from a prior run, that there will be a second or third sentence on some particular line, marking them with these commands will ensure that the marginal sentence numbers do not overwrite each other. These macros are

`\pmsentencethree`

`\pmsentencefour`

something of a kludge, but they will do until I figure out how to do this better.

`\pmnumberstoright`  
`\pmnumberstoleft`  
`\pmnumbersgutter`  
`\pmnumbersouter`

If you wish to control the margin in which sentence and paragraph numbers appear, issue `\pmnumbersright`, `\pmnumbersleft`, `\pmnumbersgutter`, or `\pmnumbersouter`. By default, these numbers will line up with the line numbers in verse sections. If you change the value of `\marginparsep` for prose sections from those used by their verse equivalents, it is a good idea to issue the verse equivalent command (`\versenumberstoright` or whatever) again when you move from a prose to a verse environment.

`\runningsentencenumberformat` sets the format of running sentence numbers. Currently it is `\textsuperscript` and `\tiny`. You can change this with `\renewcommand`. The format of marginal sentence numbers is set by `\marginsentencenumberformat`. Currently it is `\tiny`. You can change this with `\renewcommand`.

`\pmpara`  
`\pmsentencebypara`  
`\pmsparainmartrue`  
`\pmpararunningtrue`

You can also number paragraphs. Each paragraph must begin with `\pmpara`. `\pmpara` increments the paragraph counter, optionally puts the paragraph number in the running text, and optionally puts the paragraph number in the margin. To reset the sentence counter at the beginning of each paragraph, issue `\pmsentencebyparatrue` in your preamble. To set paragraph numbers in the margin, issue `\pmsparainmartrue`. To set paragraph numbers in the running text, issue `\pmpararunningtrue`. You can issue both, either, or neither of these last two commands. Which margin these numbers are set in is controlled by the same commands that control placement of marginal sentence numbers.

If you begin a paragraph with `\pmpara poemscol` will assume that you intend to include the paragraph number in your notes (in the form *paragraph: sentence:* for simple references, or *firstparagraph: firstsentence: – ;astparagraph: lastsentence:* for ranges of sentences) even if you do not reset the sentence number at the beginning of each paragraph. Normally you would not issue `\pmpara` if you are not resetting the sentence number at the beginning of each paragraph, since under those circumstances you don't really need to keep track of the paragraph numbers, in which case each note would simply include the sentence number (just as in verse it would include the line number). In the unusual event in which you wish to put the paragraph number in the margin but refer only to sentence numbers in the notes, simply follow every use of `\pmpara` with `\mpparasfalse`.

`\pmpararunningformat`  
`\pmparmarformat`

The format of running paragraph numbers is set by `\pmparrunningformat`. Currently it is `\textbf` and `\small`. The format of marginal paragraph numbers is set by `\pmparmarformat`. Currently it is `\textbf` and `\small`. Either can be changed with `\renewcommand`.

## 14.1 Cross Reference by Sentence and Paragraph

`\sentencelabel`

To make labels that refer to sentences or paragraphs, issue `\sentencelabel{}`. The label will be either both the paragraph number and the sentence number (if you are resetting sentence numbers by paragraph), or only the sentence number (if you are not resetting sentence numbers by paragraph).

## 14.2 End notes by Sentence and Paragraph

`\pmtextrnote` `\pmtextrnote`, `\pmexplanatory`, `\pmemendation`, `\pmaccidental`, `\pmtsvariant`  
`\pmexplanatory` and `\pmtsaccidental` are special versions of the usual endnote commands for  
`\pmemendation` use with annotations by sentence and paragraph. If you have not issued  
`\pmaccidental` `\pmsentencebypara` these commands will write the sentence number at the head  
`\pmtsvariant` of each note, where the line number would usually go. If you have issued  
`\pmtsaccidental` `\pmsentencebypara`, these commands will issue both the paragraph and sen-  
tence number, in the format `<paragraph number>:<sentence number>`. You  
can refer to ranges of sentences (or paragraphs and sentences) in a way very  
similar to how you do so in verse sections. At the end of the range, issue a  
`\sentencelabel` command, with a unique label. At the beginning of the range,  
issue your `\pmtextrnote` command with the optional argument in square brackets  
before the main argument, giving your unique label as the value of that argument,  
e.g. `\pmtextrnote[some label]{text of lemma} comment`. At the end of your  
range, issue `\sentencelabel{some label}`, using the same label you put in the  
square brackets for the `\pmtextrnote`. If you have not issued `\pmsentencebypara`,  
the range will simply be the range of sentence numbers. If you have issued  
`\pmsentencebypara`, the range will include paragraph and sentence numbers, like  
this: 4:12–6:13.

`\sources` needs no special handling if you are annotating by sentence and paragraph.

## 14.3 Footnotes by Sentence and Paragraph

`\textnoteatfoot` shifts `\pmtextrnotes` to the foot, as with `\prosetextrnote`.  
`\emendationsatfoot` and `\explanationsatfoot` work the same way.

## 14.4 Bible Chapter and Verse

Since `\pmsentence` and `\pmpar` are the moral equivalents of bible verse and chap-  
ter, `\biblechapter` and `\bibleverse` are provided for convenience.

## 15 Parallel Text Editions

`poemscol` does not make parallel texts in which the texts are set in parallel on the  
same page, but it can help one make parallel text editions in which the contrasting  
versions are set on facing verso and recto pages. `poemscol` does not provide the  
page breaks for parallel editions, and even if it did, one would still probably have to  
specify page breaks every two or three pages to keep the texts in register. If you are  
willing to set the page breaks yourself, however, it does provide macros for keeping  
the line count correct on successive recto or verso pages, and for keeping track of  
whether or not one was in the middle of a stanza when one closed the previous  
page on a particular side of the book. And it provides, in the `\synchrolabel`  
and `\synchroref` commands, a way of marking which lines on the recto side

correspond to particular lines on the verso side. `\synchronoref` will even tag the marginal line number it makes with a marker to specify the text to which it refers.

`\startparalleltxts`  
`\startrectopage`  
`\finishrectopage`  
`\startversopage`  
`\finishversopage`

You must begin a region of parallel text on a *verso* page. Setting parallel texts requires one to redefine the poem and stanza environments. A parallel text region must begin with `\startparalleltxts` to redefine those environments. Verso pages should begin with `\startversopage` and end with `\finishversopage`. Recto pages should begin with `\startrectopage` and end with `\finishrectopage`. You have to declare the page breaks manually, so be sure you are putting the two `\finish` commands in places which will work.

Although usually with `poemscol` it is up to you where to put the marginal line numbers, when you issue `\startparalleltxts` the positions are fixed as follows: marginal line numbers are in the left margin, line cross references (marking which lines in the recto text correspond to which lines in the verso text) are in the right margin.

`\synchronolabel`  
`\synchronoref`  
`\setsynchroflag`

To mark these cross references, you need to make a label on the verso side, and a corresponding reference on the recto side. You may also wish to add a mark to that reference to specify what edition it refers to. So, for instance, if your verso text is the 1805 version of Wordsworth's *The Prelude*, and your recto text is the 1850 version, you may wish to specify `\setsynchroflag{1850: }`, which will preface the references put out by the `\synchronoref` command with '1850: '. Suppose you wished to tie the line "Oh, what can ail thee, man at arms?" on the verso side to the line "Oh, what can ail thee, wretched wight?" on the recto. To make the label, issue the `\synchronolabel` command on the verso side just after the `\verseline` or `\end{stanza}` which closes the line you wish to label:

```
Oh, what can ail thee, man at arms?\verseline
\synchronolabel{Oh, what can ail thee, man at arms?}
```

You don't have to quote the whole line in the label, but it should be long enough to uniquely pick out that line in the poem. (If the line is repeated in the poem, you will have to exercise your ingenuity in making up a unique label.)

Over on the recto side, you will want to use `\synchronoref` in order to print the marginal cross reference. The `\synchronoref` command should come *before* the `\verseline` that closes the line it is tied to, as follows:

```
Oh, what can ail thee, wretched wight?
\synchronoref{Oh what can ail thee, knight at arms?}\verseline
```

## 16 Using poemscol in a Multilingual World

`\changecontentsname`

By default, `poemscol` uses English language titles for such things as the Table of Contents, the Explanatory Notes, and so on, and uses English language running headers. As of version 2.5 these are easily changed. To change the name of the Table of Contents (the default is CONTENTS) to Inhaltsverzeichnis, issue



	<code>\changecontentsname{Inhaltsverzeichnis}</code> . To change the running header on contents pages, issue <code>\changecontentsheader{your header}</code> .
<code>\changenotesname</code>	To change the name for the endnote section for textual notes (the default is TEXTUAL NOTES), issue <code>\changenotesname{your version}</code> . To change the running header (by default “Textual Notes to”) issue <code>\changenotesheader{your version}</code> . To change the name for the textual notes in the table of contents issue <code>\changetextnotescontentsname{your version}</code> .
<code>\changesinglepageabbrev</code> <code>\changemultiplepageabbrev</code>	Running headers refer to single pages with the English abbreviation “p.” and to multiple pages with the English abbreviation “pp.” To change these issue <code>\changesinglepageabbrev{new abbrev}</code> or <code>\changemultiplepageabbrev{new abbrev}</code> respectively. The ultimate outcome is to translate a header of the form “Textual Notes to pp. xx-yy” to the form appropriate for your language.
<code>\changeemendationsname</code>	To change the name for the endnote section for emendations (the default is EMENDATIONS), issue <code>\changeemendationsname{your version}</code> . To change the running header (by default “Emendations to”) issue <code>\changeemendationsheader{your version}</code> . To change the name for the emendations in the table of contents issue <code>\changeemendationscontentsname{your version}</code> .
<code>\changeexplanationsname</code>	To change the name for the endnote section for explanatory notes (the default is EXPLANATORY NOTES), issue <code>\changeexplanationsname{your version}</code> . To change the running header (by default “Explanatory Notes to”) issue <code>\changeexplanationsheader{your version}</code> . To change the name for the explanatory notes in the table of contents issue <code>\changeexplanationscontentsname{your version}</code> .
<code>\changepoemindexname</code>	To change the name for the index (the default is “Index of Titles and First Lines”, issue <code>\changepoemindexname{your version}</code> . To change the running header (the default is “Index of Titles and First Lines”) issue <code>\changepoemindexheader{your version}</code> . To change the contents entry for the index (the default is “Index of Titles and First Lines”) issue <code>\changepoemindexcontentsname{your version}</code> .

## 17 A sample driver file

If you are compiling a collected poems, you are probably preparing your volume from many files. You may (or may not) wish to subdivide your edition by the original volumes. Or you may subdivide by year, or by the significant phases of the poet’s career. One way to keep in control of the process is to create a driver file, which calls all the appropriate .sty files and sets the variables globally, and then read in the sections of the edition using `\input`. Here is a version of the driver file I used for *The Collected Poems of Robert Penn Warren*:

```

\documentclass[10pt,twoside]{article}
\usepackage{fancyhdr,kdgreeek,makeidx,times,multicol,geometry,}
\usepackage{keyval,ifthen,mparhack,manyfoot,poemscol}
\begin{document}

```

```

\leftheadertitle{The Collected Poems of Robert Penn Warren}
\makeexplanatorynotes
\makeemendations
\maketextnotes
\makepoemcontents
\makeverselinenumbers
\global\indexingontrue
\global\includeaccidentalstrue
\global\includetypescriptstrue
\input maintitle.tex
\input poems1922_1943.tex
\input thirtysix.tex
\input eleven.tex
\input sp43.tex
\input promises1.tex
\input promises2.tex
\input promises3.tex
\input yeo1.tex.tex
\input yeo2.tex.tex
\input yeo3.tex.tex
\input tale1.tex
\input tale2.tex
\input incarnations.tex
\input audubon.tex
\input orelse1.tex
\input orelse2.tex
\input arcturus.tex
\input nowthen.tex
\input beinghere.tex
\input rumor1.tex
\input rumor2.tex
\input cj1.tex.tex
\input cj2.tex.tex
\input altitudes.tex.tex
\input poems1943_1989.tex
\input introduction.tex
\finish

```

## 18 A sample poem markup

Here is a poem Robert Penn Warren wrote in his first volume, *Thirty-Six Poems* (1935). The poem is the first poem of his sequence “Kentucky Mountain Farm.” I include the over-title, to demonstrate how to mark up such cases.

```

\sequencetitle{Kentucky Mountain Farm}
\index{Kentucky Mountain Farm@{\em Kentucky Mountain Farm\}}
\sources{Text: TSP. Variants: SP43, SP66 (Deletes ‘‘The Cardinal,’’ ‘‘The
Jay,’’ and ‘‘Watershed’’), SP75 (Same sections as SP66), SP85 (Restores

```

‘‘Watershed’’), {\em Helsinki\} (includes only ‘‘Rebuke of  
 the Rocks’’ and  
 ‘‘At the Hour of the Breaking of the Rocks’’).  
 ‘‘The Owl’’ (above) was marked as a section of ‘‘Kentucky  
 Mountain Farm’’ when it first appeared in {\em Poetry,\} but it was never  
 included in any book version of the entire sequence. The sequence in {\em  
 Poetry\} included, in this order, ‘‘The Owl,’’ ‘‘The Cardinal,’’ and  
 ‘‘Watershed.’’ TSP uses lower case Roman numerals in the section  
 titles. The typescript drafts in the Beinecke Library do not seem to  
 be setting copies.}

\sequencefirstsectiontitle{I. Rebuke of the Rocks}  
 \index{Rebuke of the Rocks@\em Rebuke of the Rocks\}  
 \sources{Text: TSP. Variants: {\em Nation\}, 11 Jan.\ 1928,  
 p.~47, {\em Literary  
 Digest,\} 28 Jan.\ 1928, p.~32, {\em Vanderbilt Masquerader,\} 10  
 (Dec.\ 1933), p.~16, SP43, SP66, SP75, SP85, {\em Helsinki\},  
 Broadside: The Press at Colorado College, printed on paper handmade by  
 Thomas Leech for the American Poetry Society, April~26, 1985. This  
 poem was not included in SP85 until the second set of galleys, in  
 which a photocopy of the SP75 text is a stapled insert.}

\begin{poem}

\begin{stanza}

Now on you is the hungry equinox,\verseline  
 \index{Now on you is the hungry equinox}  
 O little stubborn people of the hill,\verseline  
 \accidental{hill,] \sameword--- {\em Nation,\} {\em Literary Digest\}  
 \sameword, {\em Vanderbilt\} (I include the reading  
 from {\em Vanderbilt\}  
 even though it is the same as in TSP, because  
 {\em Vanderbilt\} was published  
 after the other magazine versions but before TSP.))  
 The season of the obscene moon whose pull\verseline  
 Disturbs the sod, the rabbit, the lank fox,\verseline  
 Moving the waters, the boar’s dull blood,\verseline  
 And the acrid sap of the ironwood.\end{stanza}

\begin{stanza}

But breed no tender thing among the rocks.\verseline  
 Rocks are too old under the mad moon,\verseline  
 \accidental{old\missingpunct] \sameword, {\em Vanderbilt\}}  
 Renouncing passion by the strength that locks\verseline  
 The eternal agony of fire in stone.\end{stanza}

\begin{stanza}

Then quit yourselves as stone and cease\verseline  
 \accidental{stone\missingpunct] \sameword, {\em Vanderbilt\}}  
 To break the weary stubble-field for seed;\verseline  
 Let not the naked cattle bear increase,\verseline  
 Let barley wither and the bright milkweed.\verseline  
 \accidental{milkweed.] milk-weed. {\em Vanderbilt\}}

```
Instruct the heart, lean men, of a rocky place\verseline
That even the little flesh and fevered bone\verseline
May keep the sweet sterility of stone.\end{stanza}
\end{poem}
```

## 19 A sample divider page

```
\begin{volumetitlepage}

\volumeheader{Being Here}
\volumeheader{Being Here}
\volumeheader{Poetry 1977--1980}
\volumeheader{To Gabriel Thomas Penn\\
(1836--1920)}
\bigskip

\volumeepigraph{OLD MAN: You get old and you can't do anybody
any good any more.\\
BOY: You do me some good, Grandpa. You
tell me things.}

\bigskip

\volumeepigraph{There is in short no absolute time standard.}
\volumeattribution{{\em Van Nostrand's Scientific Encyclopedia,\/}\}
Fifth Edition, p. 2203}

\bigskip

\volumeepigraph{I thirst to know the power and nature of Time\ldots.}
\volumeattribution{St. \ Augustine: {\em Confessions,\/}\}
Book {\em XI,\/} Chapter {\em XXIII\/}\}
Translated by Albert C. Outler}

\bigskip

\volumeepigraph{Time is the dimension in which God
strives to define His own Being.}

\sources{The typescript material in the Beinecke Library
indicates that this
book went through many drafts, and some rethinking about what to
include and how to order the poems. Until a late stage of
production---very late, since the typescript includes a designed
```

mock-up of the proposed title page---the title of this volume was {\em Life is a Fable.\/} Indeed, as late as the time the book was set in galleys it was called {\em Life is a Fable\/}, although the title was corrected on the galleys. Like {\em Now and Then\/}, the typescript was assembled from photocopies of re-typed copies of poems made after their magazine appearance, with annotations giving the name of the magazine in which they occurred. Unlike {\em Now and Then\/}, the typescript seems to have been typed in one piece, and the annotations added for the convenience of the permissions department at Random House. The page numbers have been added---presumably later---in blue pen. The copy is marked up in Warren's hand in black pencil, and in another hand in red pencil. (Unless marked otherwise, all of the mark-up described here is in black pencil.) \tentry{Like most Warren typescripts BHTS is single-spaced. The dedication to Gabriel Thomas Penn and the dialogue between the old man and the boy appeared on a separate page, and the three epigraphs appeared on another separate page. BHTS gives 1838 as the year of Gabriel Thomas Penn's birth (the error is corrected on the galleys). In the quotation from Augustine, the second word is corrected to 'thirst' from 'yearn,' and the translator's name is added in pencil, not in Warren's handwriting.} In one of Warren's own copies at Western Kentucky University, he has corrected the date of Gabriel Thomas Penn's birth to 1837 (copy 310). Some revisions in this book may have come very late indeed. A letter to Erskine of January 28, 1980, refers to changes made in a bound manuscript that Warren kept after returning the copy-edited typescripts. There are revisions not only on the galleys, but also on the page proofs. There are even some corrections on the 'blues' for this volume, including some new copy on a card referred to in a note on the cover of the 'blues' but now lost. The Secker and Warburg London edition is, except for the title page, printed from the American plates. There is a copy of this book, marked up by Warren with proposed revisions for Stuart Wright's use on May 25, 1987, in the Special Collections Department of the Emory University Library. I quote Warren's notes by permission. Warren has also marked up, slightly, a copy of this book now in the Robert Penn Warren Room of the Library of the Kentucky Museum at Western Kentucky University. I quote that volume too by permission. The setting typescript for the section of SP85 drawn from this volume consisted of taped-in photocopies of passages from BH. Because the revisions for SP85 are sometimes a vexed question, I have indicated where the SP85 revisions are made on SP85TS.}

\sources{Title Page} SP85 omits the dialogue between the old man and the young boy. SP85 capitalizes 'time standard' in the quotation from Van Nostrand's Scientific Encyclopedia, and does not capitalize

```
‘‘Time’’ in the quotation from Augustine.}
```

```
\end{volumetitlepage}
```

## 20 Implementation

### 20.1 Page geometry and crop marks

`\tightgeometry` There’s no reason why you should use the page geometry I specify here. If you issue `\tightgeometry` in your preamble, you will have the geometry I have used. If you issue `\tightleading` you will redefine `\normalsize` and `\small` to use tighter leading. Normal 10 point L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X uses 12 point leading. Strictly to save money, I redefined `\normalsize` to use 11 point leading. I use the `geometry` package, since it’s simpler to figure out. I give my page geometry here chiefly to remind the reader of some important variables that should be kept track of, such as `marginparsep`, which controls the separation of the marginal line numbers from the verse line, `marginparwidth`, which controls how wide the block for the marginal line numbers will be, `headsep`, which controls how far the text will be from the running headers, and `footskip`, which controls how far the last verse line will be from the marker which tells the reader that there is a stanza break at the end of the page (if there is one). I’ve also set the odd side margin and the even side margin for two-sided printing. Finally, I have set the default handling of page endings to `\raggedbottom`. Verse should always be set with a ragged bottom margin, otherwise L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X will stretch the spaces between stanzas to make the bottom perfectly flush. When you enter prose sections, such as the editor’s introduction, you should enter the command `\flushbottom` to make sure that the prose sections have flush page bottoms.

```
1 \newcommand{\tightgeometry}{\geometry{verbose, tmargin= 33pt,
2 textwidth=318.21pt, textheight=550pt,
3 marginparsep=7pt, marginparwidth=10pt,
4 headheight= 15pt,
5 headsep=19pt,
6 footskip=15pt,
7 lmargin=132pt}
8 \setlength{\oddsidemargin}{60pt}
9 \setlength{\evensidemargin}{65.41pt}}
10 \newcommand{\tightleading}{%
11 \makeatletter
12 \renewcommand\normalsize{%
13   \@setfontsize\normalsize\@xpt\@xipt
14   \abovedisplayskip 10\p@ \@plus2\p@ \@minus5\p@
15   \abovedisplayshortskip \z@ \@plus3\p@
16   \belowdisplayshortskip 6\p@ \@plus3\p@ \@minus3\p@
17   \belowdisplayskip \abovedisplayskip
```

```

18 \let\@listi\@listI}
19 \makeatother
20 \normalsize
21 \makeatletter
22 \renewcommand\small{%
23 \setfontsize\small\@ixpt{10}%
24 \abovedisplayskip 8.5\p@ \@plus3\p@ \@minus4\p@
25 \abovedisplayshortskip \z@ \@plus2\p@
26 \belowdisplayshortskip 4\p@ \@plus2\p@ \@minus2\p@
27 \def\@listi{\leftmargin\leftmarginI
28 \topsep 4\p@ \@plus2\p@ \@minus2\p@
29 \parsep 2\p@ \@plus\p@ \@minus\p@
30 \itemsep \parsep}%
31 \belowdisplayskip \abovedisplayskip
32 }
33 \makeatother}
34
35

```

### 20.1.1 Internal font size commands

You will probably never need to use these font commands explicitly. I defined these for internal use within `poemscol`, so that a command will always call the same fonts.

As a way of making global changes to repeated features I have defined various special fonts for special purposes. For instance, in a Collected Poems in which the poems are arranged by volume, with divider pages for the beginning of each volume, the first command sets the font for the volume title on the divider page, using the default font family, setting it in 18 point type on 23 point leading. The second command, as the name of the command indicates, sets the font for the subtitle of the volume to be 14 point type on 18 point leading. You can change these either by changing the values in your (renamed) style file, or by using `\renewcommand`. For instance, you can change the font parameters for the font for setting poem titles from 14 on 18 to 12 on 14 by issuing `\renewcommand{\poemtitlefont}{\fontsize{12}{14}\selectfont}` in your preamble. Notice that there are special fonts for titles in the back matter and in the table of contents as well.

```

36 \newcommand{\volumetitlefont}{\fontsize{18}{23}\selectfont}
37 \newcommand{\volumesubtitlefont}{\fontsize{14}{18}\selectfont}
38 \newcommand{\poemtitlefont}{\fontsize{14}{18}\selectfont}
39 \newcommand{\sequencetitlefont}{\fontsize{16}{20}\selectfont}
40 \newcommand{\subsectionfont}{\fontsize{12}{14.5}\selectfont}
41 \newcommand{\backmatterheaderfont}{\fontsize{16}{20}\selectfont}
42 \newcommand{\volumetitlesink}{\leavevmode\vspace{23.5pt}}
43 \newcommand{\backmattersink}{\leavevmode\vspace{21.5pt}}
44 \newcommand{\backmatterafterheadersink}{\leavevmode\vspace{11pt}}
45 \newcommand{\backmattertextfont}{\small}
46 \newcommand{\backmatterintrofont}{\normalsize}

```

```

47 \newcommand{\backmattervolumefont}{\fontsize{12}{14.5}\selectfont}
48 \newcommand{\backmattervolumesubtitlefont}{\fontsize{11}{13}\selectfont}
49 \newcommand{\contentsvolumefont}{\fontsize{14}{20}\selectfont}
50 \newcommand{\contentsvolumesubtitlefont}{\fontsize{12}{14.5}\selectfont}
51 \newcommand{\contentssequencetitlefont}{\fontsize{10}{14}\selectfont}
52 \newcommand{\contentspoemtitlefont}{\fontsize{10}{14}\selectfont}

```

## 20.2 Miscellaneous dimensions and constants

poemscol sets relatively large penalties for widows and clubs, both in the main text, and in the notes sections. There are also special penalties after volume titles in the notes sections, since one does not want to leave a volume title in the notes sections stranded at the bottom of a page. (Setting penalties may not automatically solve all the problems, however. You can fix an intractable widow problem in the contents or in the notes sections by issuing `\literalcontents{\pagebreak}` or `\literalemend{\pagebreak}` just before you issue the `\poemtitle{}` or `\volumetitle{}` that resulted in the problematic title line.) poemscol also manipulates penalties for places like the space between a poem's title and its first line. It defines special values for the white space before and after poems and for the amount of a stanza break. `\contentsindentone`, `\contentsindenttwo`, and so on are amounts to indent different hierarchical levels, say of poetic sequences and subsequences, in the table of contents.

```

53 \widowpenalty=300
54 \clubpenalty=300
55 \newcommand{\notespoemclubpenalty}{\penalty-300}
56 \newcommand{\notessequenceclubpenalty}{\penalty-1500}
57 \newcommand{\notesvolumetitlepenalty}{\penalty-1500}

```

Since the right margin of verse is ragged anyway, I allowed some flexibility for slightly longer lines.

```
58 \hfuzz=2pt
```

For explicitly declared indented lines:

```
59 \newcommand{\verseindent}{\hspace{2em}}
```

For multicolumn notes:

```
60 \setlength{\columnsep}{15pt}
```

A hierarchy of indentations for sequence section titles and subsection titles.

```

61 \newdimen\titleindentamount \titleindentamount=1pc
62 \newdimen\titleindenttwoamount \titleindenttwoamount=2pc
63 \newdimen\titleindentthreeamount \titleindentthreeamount=3pc
64 \newcommand{\titleindent}{\hspace{\titleindentamount}}
65 \setlength{\parindent}{\titleindentamount}

```

White space after poem titles, after poems, and after sequence titles.

```

66 \newcommand{\afterpoemtitleskip}{\smallskip}
67 \newcommand{\afterpoemskip}{\bigskip}
68 \newcommand{\aftersequencetitleskip}{\medskip}

```



A little extra white space between stanzas.

```
69 \newcommand{\stanzaskip}{\medskip}
```

A hierarchy of indentations for the table of contents:

```
70 \newdimen\volumetitleshiftamount \volumetitleshiftamount=1pc
71 \newcommand{\volumetitleshift}{\hbox{\hspace{\volumetitleshiftamount}}}
72 \newdimen\voladditionalamount \voladditionalamount=2pc
73 \newdimen\contentsindentoneamount \contentsindentoneamount=24pt
74 \newcommand{\contentsindentone}{\hspace{\contentsindentoneamount}}
75 \newdimen\contentsindenttwoamount \contentsindenttwoamount=42pt
76 \newcommand{\contentsindenttwo}{\hspace{\contentsindenttwoamount}}
77 \newdimen\contentsindentthreeamount \contentsindentthreeamount=60pt
78 \newcommand{\contentsindentthree}{\hspace{\contentsindentthreeamount}}
79 \newdimen\contentsindentfouramount \contentsindentfouramount=72pt
80 \newcommand{\contentsindentfour}{\hspace{\contentsindentfouramount}}
81 \newdimen\contentsindentfiveamount \contentsindentfiveamount=80pt
82 \newcommand{\contentsindentfive}{\hspace{\contentsindentfiveamount}}
```

Penalties to encourage page breaks before poem titles, before multi-line poem titles, and before sequence titles.

```
83 \newcommand{\poemtitlepenalty}{\penalty-1000}
84 \newcommand{\multilinetitlepenalty}{\penalty-3000}
85 \newcommand{\sequencetitlepenalty}{\penalty-3000}
86 \newcommand{\multilinesequencepenalty}{\penalty-3500}
```

### 20.3 Verse

The verse environment here is taken from L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X, slightly modified to indent run over lines more. The idea is to distinguish the automatic indentation of run over lines from the explicitly declared indentation of indented lines. You can change the amount of indentation of runover lines with `\runoverindent{}`.

```
87 \def\makeatletter{\catcode'\@=11}
88 \def\makeatother{\catcode'\@=12 }
89 \newcommand{\runoverindent}[1]{\global\edef\runoverindentvalue{#1}
90 }
91 \runoverindent{6em}
92 % pmclverse (runover indented more than it is in the normal verse
93 % environment)
94 % \newenvironment{pmclverse}{%
95 % \let\=\@centercr%
96 % \list{}{\itemsep\z@ \itemindent -\runoverindentvalue\listparindent \itemindent
97 % \rightmargin 1sp\leftmargin 1sp\advance\leftmargin
98 % \runoverindentvalue}\item[]}
99 % {\endlist}
100 \newenvironment{pmclverse}[1][\linewidth]{%
101 \let\=\@centercr%
102 \list{}{\itemsep\z@
103 \itemindent -\runoverindentvalue
104 \listparindent \itemindent
```

```

105     \ifdim #1 < \linewidth
106         \rightmargin      \z@
107         \setlength{\leftmargin}{\linewidth}%
108         \addtolength{\leftmargin}{-#1}%
109         \addtolength{\leftmargin}{-0.5\leftmargin}%
110     \else
111         \rightmargin      \leftmargin
112     \fi
113 \advance\leftmargin\runoverindentvalue}
114 \item[]}
115 {\endlist}
116 \newenvironment{quotedverse}{%
117 \let\=\@centercr%
118 \list{}{\itemsep\z@ \itemindent -\runoverindentvalue\listparindent \itemindent
119         \rightmargin Osp\leftmargin Osp\advance\leftmargin
120         \runoverindentvalue}\item[]}}
121 {\endlist}
122 % rfoverse (flushes runover to right) (Just a placeholder now.)
123 % \newif\ifrfv
124 % \rfvfalse
125 % \newcommand{\rightflushrunoververse}{\global\rfvtrue}
126 % \newcommand{\indentrunoververse}{\global\rfvfalse}
127 % \newenvironment{rfoverse}{\begin{pmclverse}}{\end{pmclverse}}
128 % % verse environment with a switch
129 % \renewenvironment{verse}{\ifrfv\begin{rfoverse}\else\begin{pmclverse}\fi}
130 % {\ifrfv\end{rfoverse}\else\end{pmclverse}\fi}

```

## 20.4 Miscellaneous internal counters

`\verselinenumber` is the line number, obviously. `\printlineindex` records how many lines have passed since the last marginal line number was output. `\lineindexrepeat` governs how often the marginal line numbers appear. `\lemmalines` and `\lemmaend` are for setting number ranges for multiline lemmas.

```

131 \newcounter{verselinenumber}
132 \newcounter{printlineindex}
133 \newcounter{verselinenumberscratch}
134 \newcounter{printlineindexscratch}
135 \newcounter{lineindexrepeat} \setcounter{lineindexrepeat}{9}
136 \newcounter{lemmalines}
137 \setcounter{lemmalines}{0}
138 \newcounter{lemmaend}
139 \setcounter{lemmaend}{0}

```

This next counter is used to make labels for each poem for the contents and notes sections.

```

140 \newcounter{poemnumber}
141 \setcounter{poemnumber}{1}

```

These next two are used to set the page numbers in the running headers of the various notes sections, which are of the form “Textual notes to pp. xx–yy.”

```

142 \newcounter{notepageholdertitle} \setcounter{notepageholdertitle}{1}
143 \newcounter{notepageholdernote} \setcounter{notepageholdernote}{1}

```

## 20.5 Miscellaneous token lists

Since the explanatory notes section and the emendations section should only open an entry for poems for which there actually are explanatory notes or emendations, the current are held in token lists in case they are needed. `\titlesofar` and `\titleincrement` are used to concatenate multi-line titles.

```

144 \newtoks{\fulltitleholder}
145 \newtoks{\titlesofar}
146 \newtoks{\titleincrement}

```

## 20.6 Miscellaneous booleans

Most of these have self-explanatory names.

```

147 \newif\ifinstanza
148 \newif\ifinpoem
149 \newif\ifpoemcontentson
150 \newif\iftextnoteson
151 \newif\ifverselinenumbers
152 \newif\ifexplanon
153 \newif\ifemendationson
154 \global\verselinenumberstrue
155 \newif\ifindexingon
156 \global\indexingontrue
157 \ifindexingon
158 \makeindex
159 \fi
160 \newif\ifincludeaccidentals
161 \global\includeaccidentalstrue
162 \newif\ifincludetypescripts
163 \global\includetypescriptstrue
164 \newif\ifredundantemendations
165 \global\redundantemendationsfalse
166 \newif\ifnoemendyet
167 \newif\ifnoexplainyet
168 \global\noemendyettrue
169 \global\noexplainyettrue
170 \newif{\ifmiddlecontentsline}
171 \middlecontentslinefalse
172 \newif{\iflastcontentsline}
173 \lastcontentslinefalse
174 \newif{\ifputpagenumberincontents}
175 \putpagenumberincontentstrue
176 \newif{\ifputpagenumberinnotes}
177 \putpagenumberinnotesttrue
178 \newif{\ifsinglelinetitle}

```

```

179 \singlelinetitletrue
180 \newif{\iftitlefirstline}
181 \titlefirstlinefalse
182 \newif{\iftitlemiddleline}
183 \titlemiddlelinefalse
184 \newif{\iftitlelastline}
185 \titlelastlinefalse
186 \newif{\ifverserightflush}
187 \verserightflushfalse
188 \newif\ifrangelemma
189 \rangelemmafalse
190 \newcommand{\makeverselinenumbers}{\global\verselinenumberstrue}
191 \let\makelinenumbers=\makeverselinenumbers% for compatibility
192 \newif\iftextnotesatend
193 \textnotesatendtrue
194 \newif\ifemendationsatend
195 \emendationsatendtrue
196 \newif\ifexplanatend
197 \explanatendtrue
198 \newif\iftextfootnotespara
199 \textfootnotesparatrue
200 \newif\ifsourcesfootnotespara
201 \sourcesfootnotesparafalse
202 \newif\ifemendationfootnotespara
203 \emendationfootnotesparatrue
204 \newif\ifexplanfootnotespara
205 \explanfootnotesparafalse

```

## 20.7 Page styles

These define several special page styles. To use them you must have the `fancyhdr` package installed. First, the default running headers: the right side (`\volumeheader`) is the title of the volume in a multivolume edition, and the left (`\lefthead`) is the title of the general collection.

```

\volumeheader
\lefthead 206 \newcommand{\volumeheader}[1]{\global\edef\volumeheadervalue{#1}
207 }
208 \newcommand{\lefthead}[1]{\global\edef\leftheadervalue{#1}
209 }
210 \lefthead{\relax}
211 \volumeheader{\relax}
212 \newcommand{\righthead}[1]{\volumeheader{#1}}

```

The default page style. Note the use of the mark mechanism to keep track of cases where the stanza breaks and page breaks overlap.

```

\pagestylefancy
213 \newlength{\headoffsetlength}
214 \setlength{\headoffsetlength}{-1sp}

```

```

215 %\addtolength{\headoffsetlength}{\parindent}
216 \raggedbottom
217 \pagestyle{fancy}
218 \fancyhead{}
219 \fancyfoot{}
220 \fancyhfoffset [RO,LE]{\headoffsetlength}
221 \fancyhead [RO]{{\small\textrm{\thepage}}}
222 \fancyhead [LE]{{\small\textrm{\thepage}}}
223 \fancyhead [CO]{\hfil{\small\em \volumeheadvalue}}
224 \fancyhead [CE]{{\small\em \leftheadvalue}}\hfil}
225 \fancyfoot [CE]{{\small \botmark}\hfil}
226 \fancyfoot [CO]{\hfil{\small \botmark}}
227 \renewcommand{\headrulewidth}{0pt}
228 \renewcommand{\footrulewidth}{0pt}
229 \fancypagestyle{main}{%
230 \fancyhead{}
231 \fancyfoot{}
232 \fancyhfoffset [RO,LE]{\headoffsetlength}
233 \fancyhead [RO]{{\small\textrm{\thepage}}}
234 \fancyhead [LE]{{\small\textrm{\thepage}}}
235 \fancyhead [CO]{\hfil{\small\em \volumeheadvalue}}
236 \fancyhead [CE]{{\small\em \leftheadvalue}}\hfil}
237 \fancyfoot [CE]{{\small \botmark}\hfil}
238 \fancyfoot [CO]{\hfil{\small \botmark}}
239 \renewcommand{\headrulewidth}{0pt}
240 \renewcommand{\footrulewidth}{0pt}
241 }

```

Style for the first page of every volume in a Collected Poems. You don't have to call this style explicitly. It is called by the `\volumetitlepage` environment. But of course if you want to change the style of those pages, you should do it here.

```

242 \fancypagestyle{volumefirststyle}{%
243 \fancyhf{}
244 \fancyfoot [C]{\hfil{\small \botmark}}
245 \renewcommand{\headrulewidth}{0pt}
246 \renewcommand{\footrulewidth}{0pt}
247 }

```

Style for plain pages.

```

248 \fancypagestyle{plain}{%
249 \fancyhf{}
250 \fancyhead [RO,LE]{{\small\textrm{\thepage}}}
251 \renewcommand{\headrulewidth}{0pt}
252 \renewcommand{\footrulewidth}{0pt}
253 }

```

Style for divider pages between volumes

```

254 \fancypagestyle{volumetitlestyle}{%
255 \fancyhf{}
256 \renewcommand{\headrulewidth}{0pt}

```

```
257 \renewcommand{\footrulewidth}{0pt}
258 }
```

`\resetpagestyle` `\resetpagestyle` restores the fancy page style of the main sections of the book. `\putpoemcontents` changes the fancy page style, and `\resetpagestyle`, which is called by `\putpoemcontents` as it finishes, restores the original style

```
259 \newcommand{\resetpagestyle}{\pagestyle{main}
260 % \fancyhead{}}
261 % \fancyfoot{}}
262 % \fancyhead[RO,LE]{{\small\textrm{\thepage}}}}
263 % \fancyhead[CO]{\hfil{\small{\em \volumeheadervalue}}}}
264 % \fancyhead[CE]{{\small{\em \leftheadervalue}\hfil}}
265 % \fancyfoot[CE]{{\small \botmark}\hfil}}
266 % \fancyfoot[CO]{\hfil{\small \botmark}}
267 % \renewcommand{\headrulewidth}{0pt}
268 % \renewcommand{\footrulewidth}{0pt}
269 }
```

`\clearempydoublepage` This macro is useful for making sure that the verso of a title page is blank.

```
270 \newcommand{\clearempydoublepage}{\newpage{\pagestyle{empty}\cleardoublepage}}
271 %
```

`\mymarks` Here the marks mechanism keeps track of pages from which notes come. Marks are used different in the notes sections and in the body of the volume. In the body, they are used to keep track of cases where a stanza break falls on a page break. In the notes sections, they set the running headers.

```
272 \newtoks{\singlepageabbrev}
273 \singlepageabbrev={p.}
274 \newcommand{\changesinglepageabbrev}[1]{\singlepageabbrev={#1}}
275 \newtoks{\multiplepageabbrev}
276 \newcommand{\changemultiplepageabbrev}[1]{\multiplepageabbrev={#1}}
277 \multiplepageabbrev{pp.}
278 \newcommand{\mymarks}{%
279     \ifthenelse{\equal{\firstmark}{\botmark}}{%
280         {\unskip ~\the\singlepageabbrev~\firstmark}% if equal
281         {\unskip ~\the\multiplepageabbrev~\firstmark--\botmark}}%if not equal
282 \newcommand{\poemdotfill}{\dotfill}}
```

## 20.8 Environments: poem, and stanza

Here are definitions of the poem and stanza environments, and of the `\verseline` and `\stanzalinestraddle` macros.

`stanza` Page breaks are slightly encouraged in stanza breaks. Notice that entering a stanza sets the mark to `\relax` and leaving it sets the mark to `*` (the default value of `\stanzaatbottom`). If you want to use some other symbol for this purpose, use `\stanzaatbottom{}` or `\nostanzaatbottom{}` (if you also want to mark cases where there is *no* stanza break at the bottom of the page) to change it.

```

283 \newenvironment{stanza}{\penalty-100\instanzatrue\mark{\nostanzaatbottomvalue\ }}
284 {\nobreak\mark{\stanzaatbottomvalue\ }\nobreak\ifspeciallinelock%
285 \relax\else%
286 \nolinebreak\incrementverselinenumber%
287 \fi%
288 \speciallinelockfalse%
289 \nobreak
290 \instanzafalse
291
292 \stanzaskip
293 }
294
295 \newenvironment{marginenvironment}{-}{-}
296 \newcommand{\stanzalinestraddle}
297   {\begin{stanza}\addtocounter{verselinenumber}{-1}%
298   \addtocounter{printlineindex}{-1}%
299   }

```

The next two environments are for contents entries and titles. The idea is to handle overrun titles the way overrun lines are handled in verse. Contents entries indent the overrun slightly. Titles do not indent the overrun relative to the first line, but preserve the indentation of that line.

```

300 \newlength{\contentsentryoverrun}
301 \setlength{\contentsentryoverrun}{\contentsindentoneamount}
302 \newenvironment{contentsentryenvironment}{%
303 \language=255%no hyphenation in contents
304 \let\=\@centercr%
305 \list{}{\topsep\z@%
306 \partopsep\z@%
307 \itemsep\z@ \itemindent -\contentsentryoverrun\listparindent \itemindent
308   \rightmargin 1sp\leftmargin 1sp\advance\leftmargin
309   \contentsentryoverrun}\item[]{}\endlist}
310 \newlength{\titleentryoverrun}
311 \setlength{\titleentryoverrun}{\z@}
312 \newenvironment{titleentryenvironment}{%
313 \language=255%no hyphenation in poem titles
314 \let\=\@centercr%
315 \list{}{\topsep\z@%
316 \partopsep\z@%
317 \itemsep\z@ \itemindent -\titleentryoverrun\listparindent \itemindent
318   \rightmargin 1sp\leftmargin 1sp\advance\leftmargin
319   \titleentryoverrun}\item[]{}\endlist}

```

The poem environment. The little trick about setting the language number is designed to suppress automatic hyphenation in the poem environment. The booleans tell the `\emendation{}` and `\explanatory{}` macros that there have not yet been emendations or explanatory notes for this poem. The little trick with `\mark` sets the value of `\mark` to the current value of `\stanzaatbottom` (by default `*`) if the current location is in a poem but not in a stanza (which is to say, in a stanza break). The `\pagestyle` for poetry sets the value of `\mark` in the footer, which

is \* if the page break happens at a stanza break, and `\relax` if the page break happens anywhere else.

`poem`

```

320 % \newenvironment{poem}{\raggedright%
321 %     \language=255%no hyphenation in verse
322 %     \noemendyettrue%
323 %     \noexplainyettrue%
324 %     \setcounter{verselinenumber}{0}\setcounter{printlineindex}{0}%
325 %     \nobreak\begin{verse}%
326 %     \inpoemtrue\nobreak\mark{\relax}%
327 %     }\end{verse}%
328 %     \inpoemfalse\mark{\relax}%
329 %     \goodbreak\afterpoemskip%\bigskip
330 %     }
331 \newlength{\versewidth}
332 \newenvironment{poem}[1][\linewidth]
333 {\raggedright%
334     \language=255%no hyphenation in verse
335     \noemendyettrue%
336     \noexplainyettrue%
337     \setcounter{verselinenumber}{0}\setcounter{printlineindex}{0}%
338     \nobreak\begin{pmclverse}[#1]%
339     \inpoemtrue\nobreak\mark{\relax}%
340     }\end{pmclverse}%
341     \inpoemfalse\mark{\relax}%
342     \goodbreak\afterpoemskip%\bigskip
343     }

```

`rightflushverse` Sets verse with the runover portions of long lines flushed to the right. Each line must begin with `\rightversebegin`. This code was suggested to me by Mark Wooding on `comp.text.tex`, who describes the code as “very unpleasant.”

```

344 \newenvironment{rightflushverse}{\let\oldleftskip=\leftskip%
345 \leftskip=1 \leftskip\advance\leftskip by 0pt plus 1fill}%
346 {\let\leftskip=\oldleftskip}

```

## 20.9 Environments: main title page, divider pages

Environments for the main title page, and for the divider pages for individual volumes in a Collected Poems.

`volumetitlepage`

```

maintitlepage 347 \newenvironment{volumetitlepage}
booksectionpage 348 {\par\clearpage{\pagestyle{volumetitlestyle}\cleardoublepage}
349 \thispagestyle{volumetitlestyle}}
350     {\newpage\thispagestyle{volumetitlestyle}}
351 \cleardoublepage\thispagestyle{volumefirststyle}}
352 \newenvironment{maintitlepage}
353 {\par\cleardoublepage\thispagestyle{volumetitlestyle}}

```



```

354 }{\newpage\thispagestyle{volumetitlestyle}\cleardoublepage}
355 \newenvironment{booksectionpage}
356 {\par\newpage\thispagestyle{volumetitlestyle}}{\newpage}

```

## 20.10 Marginal line numbers, verse lines, line cross references, etc.

The default is that the line numbers are on the right side, and that the `\marginparsep` is 18pt. If you use `\pmclleftsidepar` the placement of the number is controlled by `\marginparsep` and `\marginparwidth`. You should experiment with different values until you find a set that suits you. A rule of thumb for me is that the `\marginparsep` if the numbers is on the right should be the negative of the value if it is on the left. First, some lengths and ifs:

```

357 \setlength{\marginparsep}{18pt}
358 \setlength{\marginparwidth}{10pt}
359 \newif\ifnumbersswitch \numbersswitchfalse
360 \newif\ifnumbersright \numbersrighttrue

```

Next, code for `\pmclsidepar`, taken from the memoir class, by Peter Wilson. Modified by Dan Luecking.

`\pmclsidepar`

```

361 \newcommand{\pmclsidepar}{\@dblarg{\@pmclsidepar}}
362 %\long\def\@pmclsidepar[#1]#2{\@bsphack\leavevmode\vadjust{%
363 \long\def\@pmclsidepar[#1]#2{\@bsphack\strut\vadjust{% added
364 \checkoddpage
365 \ifpmclsideparswitch
366 \ifpmclreversesidepar
367 \ifoddpage
368 \oddpagefalse
369 \else
370 \oddpagetrue
371 \fi
372 \fi
373 \else
374 \oddpagetrue
375 \ifpmclreversesidepar
376 \oddpagefalse
377 \fi
378 \fi
379 \rlap{\kern-\parindent
380 \if@twocolumn
381 \if@firstcolumn % put at left
382 \kern -\marginparsep \kern -\marginparwidth % at left
383 \else % put at right
384 \kern \columnwidth \kern \marginparsep % at right
385 \fi
386 \else
387 \ifoddpage % put at right

```

```

388     \kern \textwidth \kern \marginparsep          % at right
389     \else                                         % put at left
390     \kern -\marginparsep \kern -\marginparwidth % at left
391     \fi
392     \fi
393 %     \vbox to Opt{%
394 %     \kern \pmclsidemarginshift%                % vertical shift to align top text lines
395 %     \begin{minipage}{\marginparwidth}%
396     \setbox0=\vtop to Opt{% added
397     \begin{minipage}[t]{\marginparwidth}% added
398     \ifoddpage #2\else #1\fi%
399     \end{minipage}%
400 %     \vss}}\@esphack}
401 \vss}% added
402 \vtop to Opt{\kern\pmclsidemarginshift % default should be Opt
403 \kern-\dp\strutbox \kern-\ht0 \box0 \vss}}\@esphack}% added
404
405

```

`\thepmemc@page` The value of the page counter.

```

406 \gdef\thepmemc@page{\the\c@page}
407

```

`\pmemlabel` A version of `\label` that uses `\pmemprotected@write`.

```

408 \providecommand{\pmemlabel}[1]{\@bsphack
409   \pmemprotected@write\auxout{}%
410   {\string\newpmemlabel{#1}{\thepmemc@page}}%
411   \@esphack}

```

`\pmemprotected@write` `\pmemprotected@write` is a modified version of the kernel's `\protected@write`.

```

412 \long\def\pmemprotected@write#1#2#3{%
413   \begingroup
414   \let\thepmemc@page\relax
415   #2%
416   \let\protect\@unexpandable@protect
417   \edef\reserved@a{\write#1{#3}}%
418   \reserved@a
419   \endgroup
420   \if@nobeak\ifvmode\nobeak\fi\fi}
421

```

`\newpmemlabel` We have to be able to cope with a particular label not (yet) being in the the aux  
`\pmemlabelref` file when we come to check the page number.

```

422 \providecommand{\newpmemlabel}[2]{\global\@namedef{m@#1}{#2}}
423 \providecommand{\pmemlabelref}[1]{%
424   \expandafter\ifx\csname m@#1\endcsname\relax
425   0%
426   \else
427     \csname m@#1\endcsname

```

```
428 \fi}
429
```

`\@memcnta` We need a scratch count register.

```
430 \newcount\@memcnta
```

`\checkoddpage` This is the user level command to check for odd/even page. It does a robust check for `\strictpagecheck` otherwise the simple minded check. It sets `\ifoddpage` to TRUE if the page is odd, otherwise it sets it to FALSE.

This is now fixed so that it should work for non-arabic page numbering. It uses a new label/pageref variant based on the page counter value, not its printed representation. This also gets rid of worrying about hyperref!! The problem was discovered by Bastiaan Niels Veelo

```
431 \DeclareRobustCommand{\checkoddpage}{%
432   \oddpagfalse%
433   \ifstrictpagecheck%
434     \stepcounter{cp@cntr}\pmemlabel{\cplabel\thecp@cntr}%
435     \@memcnta=\pmemlabelref{\cplabel\thecp@cntr}\relax
436     \ifodd\@memcnta\oddpagetrue\fi
437   \else
438     \ifodd\c@page\oddpagetrue\fi
439   \fi}
440
```

`\ifpmclreversesidepar` Analogues of `\marginpar` controls.

```
\ifpmclsideparswitch 441 \newif\ifpmclreversesidepar
442 % \pmclreversesideparfalse
443 \pmclreversesidepartrue
444 \newif\ifpmclsideparswitch
445 \pmclsideparswitchfalse
446 \if@twoside \pmclsideparswitchtrue \fi
447
```

`\ifoddpage` The boolean `\ifoddpage` is TRUE if the checked page is odd. The boolean `\ifstrictpagecheck` is for turning on (TRUE) and off (FALSE) the strictest method of page checking. The counter `cp@cntr` is used to make unique labels, `\cplabel` which start with `\cplabel`.

```
448 \newif\ifoddpage
449 \newif\ifstrictpagecheck
450 \strictpagecheckfalse
451 \newcounter{cp@cntr}
452 \newcommand{\cplabel}{^_}
```

Two-column and one-column printing is again realized via a switch which is defined in the kernel. The default is single column printing.

`\pmclsideparvshift` Vertical shift for sidepar to align with text line

```
453 \newlength{\pmclsideparvshift}
```

```

454 % \setlength{\pmclsideparvshift}{-2.08ex}% seems to work for all font sizes
455 %\setlength{\pmclsideparvshift}{-2.58ex}
456 \setlength{\pmclsideparvshift}{0ex}

```

My code resumes here

```

\verselinenumberstoleft
\verselinenumberstoright 457 \newcommand{\verselinenumberstoleft}{%
458   \setlength{\marginparsep}{18pt}%
459   \setlength{\marginparwidth}{10pt}%
460   \numbersswitchfalse\numbersrightfalse}
461 \newcommand{\verselinenumberstoright}{%
462   \setlength{\marginparsep}{18pt}%
463   \setlength{\marginparwidth}{10pt}%
464   \numbersswitchfalse\numbersrighttrue}

\verselinenumbersswitch
\verselinenumbersgutter 465 \newcommand{\verselinenumbersswitch}{%
\verselinenumbersouter 466   \strictpagechecktrue%
467   \setlength{\marginparsep}{18pt}%
468   \setlength{\marginparwidth}{10pt}%
469   \numbersswitchtrue\numbersrightfalse\pmclsideparswitchtrue}
470 \newif\ifnumbersgutter \numbersgutterfalse%
471 \newcommand{\verselinenumbersgutter}{\verselinenumbersswitch%
472 \pmclreversesideparfalse%
473 \numbersguttertrue%
474 }
475 \newcommand{\verselinenumbersouter}{\verselinenumbersswitch%
476 \pmclreversesidepartrue%
477 \numbersgutterfalse}

\putverselinenumber
478 \newcommand{\putverselinenumber}{\nolinebreak\begin{marginenvironment}%
479   \nolinebreak%
480 % \ifnumbersswitch\marginpar{\hfil\textrm{\scriptsize\theverselinenumber}}}%
481 %   \else%
482 %   \ifnumbersright\marginpar{\hfil\textrm{\scriptsize\theverselinenumber}}}%
483 %   \else%
484 %   \marginpar{\textrm{\scriptsize\theverselinenumber}\hfil}%
485 %   \fi%
486 %   \fi
487 \ifnumbersswitch\pmclsidepar{\hfil\textrm{\scriptsize\theverselinenumber}}}%
488 \else%
489 \ifnumbersright\pmclrightsidepar{\hfil\textrm{\scriptsize\theverselinenumber}}}%
490 \else%
491 \pmclleftsidepar
492 {\textrm{\scriptsize\theverselinenumber}\hfil}%
493 \fi%
494 \fi%
495 % \marn{\hfil\textrm{\theverselinenumber}}

```

```

496 % \marginpar{\hfil\texttrm{\scriptsize\theverselinenumber}}
497 % \linenumberside{\texttrm{\scriptsize\theverselinenumber}\hfil}
498 % \pmclrightsidedepar{\texttrm{\scriptsize\theverselinenumber}}
499 \nolinebreak%
500 \end{marginenvironment}%
501 \nolinebreak%
502 }

```

`\verseline`

```

503 \newif\ifspeciallinelock
504 \speciallinelockfalse
505 \newcommand{\verseline}{\ifspeciallinelock%
506 \relax\else%
507 \nolinebreak\incrementverselinenumber%
508 \fi%
509 \speciallinelockfalse%
510 \nolinebreak\\
511 }
512 \newcommand{\incrementverselinenumber}{%
513 \nolinebreak\addtocounter{verselinenumber}{1}%
514 \addtocounter{printlineindex}{1}%
515 \ifnum\theprintlineindex>\thelineindexrepeat%
516 \ifverselinenumbers\nobreak%
517 \putverselinenumber\nobreak%
518 \fi\nobreak%
519 \setcounter{printlineindex}{0}%
520 \fi%
521 }
522 \newcommand{\setverselinemodulo}[1]{%
523 \setcounter{lineindexrepeat}{#1}%
524 \addtocounter{lineindexrepeat}{-1}%
525 }

```

`\linebend` A linebend is a a normal linebreak from L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X, with no incrementing of the line number counter, but the indentation makes the line look like a run over line. If you change the value of the run over in the definition of the `\verse` environment, be sure to change it here too. `\linebend` should be used for tweaking how poemscol runs over long lines.

```

526 \newcommand{\linebend}{\\
527 \hspace{\runoverindentvalue}%
528 }

```

`\saveverselinenumber` and `\restoreverselinenumber` are useful for setting prose interjections in the midst of poems.

```

\saveverselinenumber
\restoreverselinenumber 529 \newcommand{\saveverselinenumber}{\setcounter{verselinenumberscratch}%
530 \value{verselinenumber}}%
531 \setcounter{printlineindexscratch}{\value{printlineindex}}

```

```

532 \newcommand{\restoreverselinenumber}{\setcounter{verselinenumber}%
533     {\value{verselinenumberscratch}}%
534     \setcounter{printlineindex}{\value{printlineindexscratch}}}

\rightversebegin By default, poemscol indents the runover portion of long lines by the amount
\runoverindent (by default 6 em). It is possible to set verse so that the runover
portion is flushed to the right margin. To do this, you should enclose the \poem
environment in the \rightflushverse environment. And you must mark the
beginning of each verse line with \rightversebegin
535 \newcommand{\rightversebegin}
536 {\leavevmode\nobreak\hskip0pt plus -1fill\ignorespaces}

\hour \hour{ } is useful for typesetting the AM and the PM in the time.
537 \newcommand{\hour}[1]{\textsc{#1}}\ $!\!\\!$}
538 }

\brokenline \brokenline and \versephantom{ } are a pair, useful for setting cases where there
\versephantom is a line break in the midst of a single metrical line. \tweakbrokenline ensures
that the line number will mark the first partial line if the line numbers are on
the left, the last partial line if the line numbers are on the right. If you have
issued \tweakbrokenline in your preamble, the setting of runover lines may not
be consistent with the setting of broken lines, because the line number will be
set on the level of the end of the line. This is not a problem if the line numbers
are set on the right, but it may look odd if the numbers are set on the left.
\startverseline will ensure that the line number marks the beginning of any
line it begins. If you put \startverseline at the beginning of the runover lines,
it will ensure that the line number marks the beginning, not the end, of the line.
If you wish \startverseline to align the number with the beginning of runover
lines when the line number is on the left, and with the end of runover lines when
the line number is on the right, issue \tweakstartverseline in your preamble.
539 \newcommand{\brokenline}{\}
540 \newcommand{\versephantom}[1]{\leavevmode\phantom{#1}}

\tweakbrokenline Causes \brokenline to set the line number level with the beginning of the line if
the number is on the left, level with the end of the line if the number is on the
right. Issue it in the preamble.
541 \newcommand{\tweakbrokenline}{%
542 \renewcommand{\brokenline}{\ifnumbersswitch\relax%
543 \ifnumbersgutter% shift on odd pages for gutter numbers
544 \ifodd\c@page \relax \else \speciallinelocktrue\incrementverselinenumber\fi
545 \else % shift on even pages for outer numbers
546 \ifodd\c@page \speciallinelocktrue\incrementverselinenumber \fi
547 \fi
548 \else \ifnumbersright \relax%
549 \else \speciallinelocktrue\incrementverselinenumber%
550 \fi%
551 \fi%
552 \}

```

```

553 }

\brokenlineatbeginning Issue \brokenlineatbeginning if you want broken line to set the line number
level with the beginning of the line, regardless of whether the line number is at
the right or at the left
554 \newcommand{\brokenlineatbeginning}{%
555   \renewcommand{\brokenline}{%
556     \speciallinelocktrue\incrementverselinenumber%
557   }
558 }
559 }

\startverseline Put \startverseline at the beginning of every line where you wish to ensure
that the line number is level with the beginning of the line. This is particularly
useful for overrun lines when \tweakbrokenline or \brokenlineatbeginning is
in effect.
560 \newcommand{\startverseline}{%
561   \speciallinelocktrue%
562   \leavevmode%
563   %\kern-3pt
564   \incrementverselinenumber%
565 }

\tweakstartverseline You may want \startverseline to align the line number with the beginning of
the line if the line number is on the left, and with the end of the line if the line
number is on the right. To do this, issue \tweakstartline in your preamble.
566 \newcommand{\tweakstartverseline}{%
567   \renewcommand{\startverseline}{%
568     \leavevmode%
569     \ifnumbersswitch%
570     % gutter case: shift on odd pages to top of runover line
571     \ifnumbersgutter%
572       \ifodd\c@page \relax \else \speciallinelocktrue\incrementverselinenumber\fi
573     % outer case: shift on even pages to top of runover line
574     \else
575       \ifodd\c@page \speciallinelocktrue\incrementverselinenumber \fi
576     \fi% end of ifnumbersgutter
577   \else \ifnumbersright \relax% numbers don't switch. Are they to the right?
578     \else \speciallinelocktrue\incrementverselinenumber% or to the left?
579     \fi% end of ifnumbersright
580   \fi% end of ifnumbersswitch
581 }% end of renewcommand
582 }% end of tweakverseline

\poemlinelabel \poemlinelabel is a hacked version of \label for crossreferences by line.
583 \def\poemlinelabel#1{\@bsphack
584   \protected@write\@auxout{%
585     {\string\newlabel{#1}{\theverselinenumber}{\thepage}}}%
586   \@esphack
587 }

```

## 20.11 Setup for contents, textual notes, emendations, and explanatory notes

First, the table of contents:

```

\makepoemcontents An external file is created with the extension .ctn, and the filename of your driver
file. The channel to that file is called \poemcontents. The rest of the com-
mand is the page style for the contents section. You will notice the running
head Contents, and the title of the Contents section. I am assuming that the
table of contents starts on page 5, but it may be different in different books.
If you want to change that page number (say, to page 3) without messing with
this file, issue \literalcontents{\setcounter{page}{3}} just after you issue
\makepoemcontents Alternatively, you can issue \makepoemcontents{ } with its
optional argument, putting the page number in the argument.
588 \newtoks{\pmclcontentsname}
589 \pmclcontentsname={CONTENTS}
590 \newtoks{\pmclcontentsheader}
591 \pmclcontentsheader={Contents}
592 \newcommand{\changecontentsname}[1]{%
593 \pmclcontentsname={#1}}
594 \newcommand{\changecontentsheader}[1]{%
595 \pmclcontentsheader={#1}}
596 \newcommand{\makepoemcontents}[1][5]{\global\poemcontentsontrue
597 \newwrite\poemcontents
598 \immediate\openout\poemcontents=\jobname.ctn
599 \literalcontents{\flushbottom\normalfont
600 {\par\clearpage{\pagestyle{volumetitlestyle}\cleardoublepage}
601 \pagestyle{fancy}\thispagestyle{volumetitlestyle}}
602 \pagenumbering{roman}
603 \setcounter{page}{#1}
604 \fancyhead[RO,LE]{\small\textrm{\thepage}}}
605 \fancyhead[CO]{\small\em \the\pmclcontentsheader}}}
606 \fancyhead[CE]{\small\em \the\pmclcontentsheader}}}
607 \fancyfoot{ }
608 \backmattersink
609 \begin{center}{\normalfont \backmatterheaderfont
610 \the\pmclcontentsname}\end{center}
611 \leftthyphenmin=2\backmatterafterheadersink\tolerance=500\language=0}
612 \literalcontents{ \relax}}

```

Next, the textual collations:

```

\maketextnotes Like the \makecontents macro, \maketextnotes opens an external file using
\jobname, this time with the extension .ent. It makes sure that line numbering is
on (since it makes no sense to make notes without numbering the lines, particularly
since the \textnote{ } macro uses the line number). And it makes sure that the
notes section is set with a flush bottom line, rather than with the ragged bottom
line used for the verse sections. Also, it sets a label for sending the page number
of the textual notes to the table of contents.

```



First, a few commands for use by all of the endnotes sections. `\setendnotessectiontitledefaults` sets the title of the endnotes section at the top of the first page of that species of note, and takes six arguments, which are, in order, (1) the title of the endnote section, (2) commands to be issued before setting the title (minimally, a penalty, such as `\poemtitlepenalty`), (3) the font size in which the title is to be set in the text (such as `\poemtitlefont` or `\large`), (4) any indentation of the title (`\relax` to put the title where `\poemtitle` puts it, or `\titleindent` to put it where `\sequencesectiontitle` puts it), (5) commands to be issued after the title is set (such as `\afterpoemtitleskip`) and (6) the label to be used for this section, to be used to set the page number in the table of contents.

`\setendnotessectiontitle` is a simpler version of `\setendnotessectiontitledefaults` with all the defaults filled in, leaving only two arguments, the title of the section, and the label for use by the table of contents.

`\contentsendnotesdefaults` sets the defaults for the table of contents entries for endnotes sections. It takes four arguments which are, in order, (1) the title of the endnote section, (2) the indentation of the title in the table of contents (such as `\contentsindentone`), (3), the font size in which the title should be set (such as `\contentspoemtitlefont`) and (4) the amount overrun lines in the table of contents should be indented (such as `\contentsindenttwoamount`).

`\contentsendnotesindent` sets the default indent for table of contents entries for endnotes sections, and `\contentsendnotesfont` sets the default font for the.

`\contentsendnotestitle` is a simpler command for sending information about endnote sections to the table of contents, taking only two arguments, the title and the label used for page reference purposes.

```

613 % Generic command for titles of endnote sections
614 \newcommand{\setendnotessectiontitledefaults}[6]{%
615 #2%
616 #3 \begin{titleentryenvironment}%
617 {\ifcentertitleson\begin{center}#4 #1\end{center}\else #4 #1\fi}%
618 \end{titleentryenvironment}%
619 #5%
620 \label{#6}
621 }
622 % Simpler version with only two parameters, the title and the label
623 % for page references
624 \newcommand{\setendnotessectiontitle}[2]{
625 \setendnotessectiontitledefaults{#1}{\poemtitlepenalty\backmattersink\begin{center}}{\backmatter
626 {\relax}\end{center}\lefthyphenmin=2\backmatterafterheadersink}{#2}}
627 % Generic command for sending info about endnotes sections to table
628 % of contents
629 \newcommand{\contentsendnotesdefaults}[4]{\ifpoemcontentson
630 \immediate\write\poemcontents{\string\begin\string{contentsentryenvironment}\string}}%
631 \literalcontents{#2{#3#1}}%
632 \ifputpagenumberincontents
633 \immediate\write\poemcontents{\string\contentsleaders}%

```

```

634 \immediate\write\poemcontents{\string\pageref
635 \string{#4\string}}%
636 \else
637 \literalcontents{\relax}%
638 \fi
639 \immediate\write\poemcontents{\string\end\string{contentsentryenvironment\string}}%
640 \immediate\write\poemcontents{\string\par}%
641 \fi
642 }
643 % default styles for contents entries for endnotes sections
644 \newcommand{\contentsendnotesindent}{\contentsindentone}
645 \newcommand{\contentsendnotesfont}{\contentspoemtitlefont}
646 % simpler command to set up contents entry with only tw parameters,
647 % the title and the label for page references
648 \newcommand{\contentsendnotestitle}[2]{%
649 \contentsendnotesdefaults{#1}{\contentsendnotesindent}{\contentsendnotesfont}{#2}%
650 }
651 % tokens to use to change the names of the sections
652 \newtoks{\pmclnotesname}
653 \pmclnotesname={TEXTUAL NOTES}
654 \newcommand{\changenotesname}[1]{\pmclnotesname={#1}}
655 \newtoks{\notesheadername}
656 \notesheadername={Textual Notes to}
657 \newcommand{\changenotesheader}[1]{\notesheadername={#1}}
658 \newtoks{\textnotescontentsname}
659 \textnotescontentsname={Textual Notes}
660 \newcommand{\changetextnotescontentsname}[1]{\textnotescontentsname={#1}}
661 % A boolean to change to two column notes.
662 \newif\iftextnotestwocol
663 \textnotestwocolfalse
664 % Setup for textual notes
665 \newcommand{\maketextnotes}{\global\textnotesontrue
666 \global\verselinenumberstrue
667 \newwrite\textnotes
668 \immediate\openout\textnotes=\jobname.ent
669 \literaltextnote{\flushbottom{\par\clearpage
670 {\pagestyle{volumetitlestyle}\cleardoublepage}
671 \thispagestyle{volumetitlestyle}}
672 \fancyhead{}
673 \fancyfoot{}
674 \fancyhead[RO,LE]{\small\textrm{\thepage}}}
675 \fancyhead[CO]{\small{\em \the\notesheadername~\mymarks}}}
676 \fancyhead[CE]{\small{\em \the\notesheadername~\mymarks}}}
677 \fancyfoot[C]}
678 \mark{3}
679 \setendnotessectiontitle{\the\pmclnotesname}{textualnotes}
680 \tolerance=500\language=0
681 \normalfont \backmattertextfont
682 \iftextnotestwocol
683 \begin{multicols}{2}

```

```

684 \fi
685 \setlength{\parindent}{-10pt}
686 }
687 }
688

```

`\makeemendations` Next, the emendations section:

```

689 % tokens for changing the names of these notes
690 \newtoks{\emendationsname}
691 \emendationsname={EMENDATIONS}
692 \newcommand{\changeemendationsname}[1]{\emendationsname={#1}}
693 \newtoks{\emendationsheadername}
694 \emendationsheadername={Emendations to}
695 \newcommand{\changeemendationsheader}[1]{\emendationsheadername={#1}}
696 \newtoks{\emendationscontentsname}
697 \emendationscontentsname={Emendations}
698 \newcommand{\changeemendationscontentsname}[1]{%
699 \emendationscontentsname={#1}}
700 % two column notes
701 \newif\ifemendationstwocol
702 \emendationstwocolfalse
703 % Emendations section setup
704 \newcommand{\makeemendations}{\global\emendationsontrue
705 \newwrite\emendations
706 \global\verselinenumberstrue
707 \immediate\openout\emendations=\jobname.emd
708 \literate\emend{\flushbottom{\par\clearpage
709 {\pagestyle{volumetitlestyle}\cleardoublepage}
710 \thispagestyle{volumetitlestyle}}
711 \fancyhead{}
712 \fancyhead[RO,LE]{{\small\textrm{\thepage}}}}
713 \fancyhead[CO]{{\small{\em \the\emendationsheadername~\mymarks}}}}
714 \fancyhead[CE]{{\small{\em \the\emendationsheadername~\mymarks}}}}
715 \fancyfoot{}
716 \mark{3}
717 \setendnotessectiontitle{\the\emendationsname}{emendationnotes}
718 \tolerance=500\language=0
719 \normalfont \backmattertextfont
720 \ifemendationstwocol
721 \begin{multicols}{2}
722 \fi
723 \setlength{\parindent}{-10pt}
724 }
725 }

```

`\makeexplanatorynotes` And the explanatory notes:

```

726 % Tokens to change names of these notes
727 \newtoks{\explanationsname}
728 \explanationsname={EXPLANATORY NOTES}
729 \newcommand{\changeexplanationsname}[1]{\explanationsname={#1}}

```

```

730 \newtoks{\explanationsheadername}
731 \explanationsheadername={Explanatory Notes to}
732 \newcommand{\changeexplanationsheader}[1]{\explanationsheadername={#1}}
733 \newtoks{\explanationscontentsname}
734 \explanationscontentsname={Explanatory Notes}
735 \newcommand{\changeexplanationscontentsname}[1]{%
736 \explanationscontentsname={#1}}
737 % Two column notes
738 \newif\ifexplanationstwocol
739 \explanationstwocolfalse
740 % Explanatory notes setup
741 \newcommand{\makeexplanatorynotes}{\global\explanontrue
742 \global\verselinenumberstrue
743 \newwrite\explanations
744 \immediate\openout\explanations=\jobname.enx
745 \literate\explain{\flushbottom{\par\clearpage
746 {\pagestyle{volumetitlestyle}\cleardoublepage}
747 \thispagestyle{volumetitlestyle}}
748 \fancyhead[RO,LE]{\small\textrm{\thepage}}}
749 \fancyhead[CO]{\small{\em \the\explanationsheadername~\mymarks}}}
750 \fancyhead[CE]{\small{\em \the\explanationsheadername~\mymarks}}}
751 \fancyfoot{}
752 \mark{3}
753 \setendnotessectiontitle{\the\explanationsname}{explanatorynotes}
754 \tolerance=500\language=0
755 \normalfont \backmattertextfont
756 \ifexplanationstwocol
757 \begin{multicols}{2}
758 \fi
759 \setlength{\parindent}{-10pt}
760 }
761 }
762

```

#### Auxiliary commands for note and title sections

```

763 %
764 \newcommand{\@pagemarktotextnotes}[1]{%
765 \immediate\write\textnotes{\string\setcounterfrompageref\string{notepageholdertitle}\string}%
766 \string{#1\string}\string\unskip}%
767 \immediate\write\textnotes{\string\mark%
768 \string{\string\thenotepageholdertitle\string}}%
769 }
770 \newcommand{\@poempagetotextnotes}[1]{%
771 \immediate\write\textnotes{\string\par\string\argpageref\string{#1\string}\string\unskip}%
772 \@pagemarktotextnotes{#1}}
773 \newcommand{\@poemtitletotextnotes}[1]{\literate\textnote{\textbf{#1}}}

```

## 20.12 Book, volume, and volume section titles

```

\wholebooktitle
\booksection 774 \newcommand{\wholebooktitle}[1]{\Huge\begin{center}
775 \hbox{#1}\end{center}}
776 }
777 \newcommand{\booksection}[1]{\volumesection{#1}}

\volumetitle
778 \newcommand{\volumetitle}[1]{%
779 \set@p@emtitle{#1}{\volumetitlesink\par}{\volumetitlefont}
780 {\relax}{\nobreak\par\nobreak}{\z@}
781 \putpagenumberincontentsfalse
782 \putpagenumberinnotesfalse
783 \literalcontents{\goodbreak}
784 \c@ntentsinfo{#1}{\relax}{\contentsvolumefont}
785 {\contentsindentoneamount}
786 \literalcontents{\vspace{5pt}\par\nobreak}
787 \literaltextnote{\notesvolumetitlepenalty\bigskip\goodbreak\par}
788 \t@xtnotesinfo{\backmattervolumefont #1 \backmattertextfont\nobreak}
789 \putpagenumberincontentstrue
790 \putpagenumberinnotestrue}

\volumetitlefirstline
\volumetitlelastline 791 \newcommand{\volumetitlefirstline}[1]{\firstlinesettings%
\volumesubtitle 792 \set@p@emtitle{#1}{\volumetitlesink\par}
\volumesectiontitle 793 {\volumetitlefont}
794 {\relax}{\nobreak\par\nobreak}{\z@}
795 \putpagenumberincontentsfalse
796 \putpagenumberinnotesfalse
797 \c@ntentsinfo{#1}{\relax}{\contentsvolumefont}
798 {\contentsindentoneamount}
799 % \literalcontents{\vspace{5pt}\par\nobreak}
800 % \literaltextnote{\notesvolumetitlepenalty\bigskip\par}
801 \t@xtnotesinfo{\backmattervolumefont #1 \backmattertextfont\nobreak}
802 \putpagenumberincontentstrue
803 \putpagenumberinnotestrue}
804 \newcommand{\volumetitlemiddleline}[1]{\middlelinesettings%
805 \set@p@emtitle{#1}{\relax}
806 {\volumetitlefont}
807 {\relax}{\nobreak\par\nobreak}{\z@}
808 \putpagenumberincontentsfalse
809 \putpagenumberinnotesfalse
810 \c@ntentsinfo{#1}{\contentsindentone}{\contentsvolumefont}
811 {\contentsindenttwoamount}
812 \t@xtnotesinfo{\backmattervolumefont #1 \backmattertextfont\nobreak}
813 \putpagenumberincontentstrue
814 \putpagenumberinnotestrue}
815 \newcommand{\volumetitlelastline}[1]{\lastlinesettings%
816 \set@p@emtitle{#1}{\relax}

```

```

817 {\volumetitlefont}
818 {\relax}{\nobreak\par\nobreak}{\z@}
819 \putpagenumberincontentsfalse
820 \putpagenumberinnotesfalse
821 \c@contentsinfo{#1}{\contentsindentone}{\contentsvolumefont}
822 {\contentsindenttwoamount}
823 \literalcontents{\vspace{5pt}\par\nobreak}
824 \t@xtnotesinfo{\backmattervolumefont #1 \backmattertextfont\nobreak}
825 \putpagenumberincontentstrue
826 \putpagenumberinnotestrue}
827 \newcommand{\volumesubtitle}[1]{\volumesubtitlefont
828 \volumetitleshift #1 \par}
829 \ifpoemcontentson
830 \literalcontents{\contentsvolumesubtitlefont
831 #1\vspace{3pt}\par\nobreak}}
832 \fi
833 \iftextnoteson\iftextnotesatend
834 \immediate\write\textnotes{\string\backmattervolumesubtitlefont\ #1}
835 \immediate\write\textnotes{\string\par \string\backmattertextfont}
836 \immediate\write\textnotes{\string\nobreak}
837 \fi\fi
838 }
839 \newcommand{\volumesectiontitle}[1]
840 {\clearpage\thispagestyle{volumefirststyle}
841 \begin{center} {\volumesubtitlefont\textbf{#1}}
842 \end{center} \bigskip\bigskip
843 \ifpoemcontentson
844 \literalcontents{\goodbreak{\contentsvolumesubtitlefont #1\par\nobreak}}
845 \fi
846 \iftextnoteson\iftextnotesatend
847 \immediate\write\textnotes{\string\notesvolumetitlepenalty}
848 \immediate\write\textnotes{\string\par \string\begin{bf}}
849 \immediate\write\textnotes{#1 \string\end{bf}}
850 \immediate\write\textnotes{\string\par}
851 \immediate\write\textnotes{\string\nobreak}
852 \fi\fi
853 }

```

## 20.13 Commands for setting titles of poems and sequences

First, commands for sending labels to the table of contents and to the notes sections. Since these are internal commands, not intended to be issued in the body of the text, they might have been marked out with “at” signs to prevent accidental redefinition. But since they are repeatedly written out to the external files, it seemed more economical to run the risk of redefinition than to write out `\makeatletter` and `\makeatother` with every note.

```

854 \newcommand{\makepoemlabel}[1]{\label{#1}}
855 \newcommand{\argpageref}[1]{\pageref{#1}}

```

### 20.13.1 Poem Titles

`\poemtitle` All of the other commands in this section are variations on this one, changing the penalties, the skips, the indentations, and the fonts. The command breaks into three sections. First, the title is set in the text. `\poemtitlepenalty` tests whether there is room for the title and the first couple of lines. `\poemtitlefont` globally sets the fonts for all poem titles. You can put the argument in an `\hbox{}` to make sure that the poem title is not broken across two lines, and the `\label` records the page for the contents and notes sections. `\afterpoemtitleskip` is the amount of white space after a poem title. `\fulltitleholder` and `\@compoundlabelscratch` record the title for concatenation later. All of these commands can manage titles with control sequences in them, such as for italics or international characters. In an earlier version there were special commands for such titles, using two arguments (one with the control sequence, one without it). Those commands are no longer necessary, but have been retained for backward compatibility with earlier versions.

Second, the poem is entered in the external file for the table of contents. `\contentsindentone` sets it in one level in the hierarchy of indentations, and `\contentspoemtitlefont` is the type size used for poems in the table of contents. The `\pageref{}` holds the page number of the poem.

Third, a new paragraph is opened in the textual notes for textual collations. `\@poempagetotextnotes{}` sends the page number to the textual notes. `\@poemtitletotextnotes{}` sends the title.

```
856
857
858 \newcommand{\m@kep@emlabel}{\ifsinglelinetitle%
859   \addtocounter{poemnumber}{1}%
860   \makepoemlabel{poem\thepoemnumber}%
861   \else\iftitlefirstline%
862     \addtocounter{poemnumber}{1}%
863     \makepoemlabel{poem\thepoemnumber}%
864     \else \relax
865 \fi
866 \fi
867 }
868
869 \newcommand{\m@ken@tether}[1]{%
870 \ifsinglelinetitle
871 \fulltitleholder={#1}%
872 \global\edef\@compoundlabelscratch{poem\thepoemnumber}%
873 \else\iftitlefirstline
874   \fulltitleholder={#1}%
875   \global\edef\@compoundlabelscratch{poem\thepoemnumber}%
876   \else\iftitlemiddleline
877     \titlesofar=\fulltitleholder
878     \titleincrement={~#1}%
879     \global\edef\titleconcat{\the\titlesofar \the\titleincrement}%
880     \fulltitleholder=\expandafter{\titleconcat}%
881     \global\edef\@compoundlabelscratch{poem\thepoemnumber}%
```

```

882 \else
883     \titlesofar=\fulltitleholder
884     \titleincrement={~#1}%
885     \global\edef\titleconcat{\the\titlesofar \the\titleincrement}%
886     \fulltitleholder=\expandafter{\titleconcat}%
887     \global\edef\@compoundlabelscratch{poem\thepoemnumber}%
888     \fi
889     \fi
890 \fi
891 }
892 \newif\ifcentertitleson
893 \newcommand{\centertitles}{\centertitlesontrue}
894 \makeatletter
895 \newcommand{\set@p@emtitle}[6]{\setlength{\titleentryoverrun}{#6}%
896 {#2}%
897 {#3 \begin{titleentryenvironment}%
898 {\ifcentertitleson\begin{center}#4 #1\end{center}\else #4 #1\fi}%
899 \end{titleentryenvironment}}%
900 {#5}%
901 \m@kep@emlabel
902 \m@ken@teholder{#1}%
903 \setlength{\titleentryoverrun}{\z@}}
904
905 % \newcommand{\set@p@emtitle}[6]{\setlength{\titleentryoverrun}{#6}%
906 % {#2}%
907 % {#3 \begin{titleentryenvironment}{#4 #1}\end{titleentryenvironment}}%
908 % {#5}%
909 % \m@kep@emlabel
910 % \m@ken@teholder{#1}%
911 % \setlength{\titleentryoverrun}{\z@}}
912
913 \newcommand{\setcontentsleaders}[1]{%
914     \def\contentsleaders{#1\nobreak%
915 }}
916 \setcontentsleaders{~/~}
917 \newcommand{\c@ntentsinfo}[4]{\ifpoemcontentson
918 \immediate\write\poemcontents{\string\setlength\string\contentsentryoverrun\string{#4\string}}%
919 \immediate\write\poemcontents{\string\begin\string{contentsentryenvironment\string}}%
920 \literalcontents{#2{#3#1}}%
921 \ifputpagenumberincontents
922 \immediate\write\poemcontents{\string\contentsleaders}%
923 \immediate\write\poemcontents{\string\pageref
924 \string{poem\thepoemnumber\string}}%
925 \else
926 \literalcontents{\relax}%
927 \fi
928 \immediate\write\poemcontents{\string\end\string{contentsentryenvironment\string}}%
929 \immediate\write\poemcontents{\string\par}%
930 \immediate\write\poemcontents{\string\setlength\string\contentsentryoverrun
931 \string{\string\contentsindentoneamount\string}}%

```



```

932 \fi
933 }
934 \newif\ifputtitleinnotes
935 \puttitleinnotestru
936 \newcommand{\t@xtnotesinfo}[1]{\iftextnoteson
937 \iftextnotesatend
938 \immediate\write\textnotes{\string\notespoemclubpenalty}%
939 \ifputpagenumberinnotes
940 \@poempagetotextnotes{poem\thepoemnumber}%
941 \fi
942 \ifputtitleinnotes
943 \@poemtitletotextnotes{#1}%
944 \fi
945 % \else
946 % \relax
947 \fi\fi
948 }
949 \newcommand{\poemtitle}[1]{%
950 \set@p@emtitle{#1}{\poemtitlepenalty}{\poemtitlefont}%
951 {\relax}{\nobreak\par\nobreak\afterpoemtitleskip\nobreak}{\z@}%
952 \c@ntentsinfo{#1}{\contentsindentone}{\contentspoemtitlefont}%
953 {\contentsindenttwoamount}%
954 \t@xtnotesinfo{#1}%
955 }
956 \newcommand{\poemtitlenocontents}[1]{%
957 \set@p@emtitle{#1}{\poemtitlepenalty}{\poemtitlefont}%
958 {\relax}{\nobreak\par\nobreak\afterpoemtitleskip\nobreak}{\z@}%
959 \t@xtnotesinfo{#1}%
960 }
961 \newcommand{\poemtitlebaretitle}[1]{%
962 \set@p@emtitle{#1}{\poemtitlepenalty}{\poemtitlefont}%
963 {\relax}{\nobreak\par\nobreak\afterpoemtitleskip\nobreak}{\z@}%
964 }

```

`\poemtitleitalic` Poems with italic titles or other formatting (such as `\hour{}`) take two arguments. The second argument is discarded. This command is to maintain backward compatibility with earlier versions.

```

965 \newcommand{\poemtitleitalic}[2]{%
966 \poemtitle{#1}}

```

For poem subtitles, see the entry on `\sequencesections subtitle{}`.

`\poemtitlefirstline` Next, macros for setting multiline poem titles. Notice the special larger penalty  
`\poemtitlemiddleline` for page breaks in the middle of multiple line title.

```

\poemtitlelastline 967 \newcommand{\firstlinesettings}{\singlelinetitlefalse
968 \titlefirstlinetrue
969 \putpagenumberincontentsfalse
970 \putpagenumberinnotestru}
971

```

```

972 \newcommand{\middlelinesettings}{\singlelinetitlefalse
973 \titlemiddlelinetrue
974 \putpagenumberincontentsfalse
975 \putpagenumberinnotesfalse}
976
977 \newcommand{\lastlinesettings}{\singlelinetitlefalse
978 \titlelastlinetrue
979 \putpagenumberincontentstrue
980 \putpagenumberinnotesfalse}
981
982 \newcommand{\restoresinglelinesettings}{\putpagenumberinnotestru
983 \putpagenumberincontentstrue
984 \titlefirstlinefalse
985 \titlemiddlelinefalse
986 \titlelastlinefalse
987 \singlelinetitletrue}
988
989
990 \newcommand{\poemtitlefirstline}[1]{
991 \firstlinesettings
992 \set@p@emtitle{#1}{\multilinetitlepenalty}{\poemtitlefont}%
993 {\relax}{\nobreak\par\nobreak}{\z@}%
994 \c@ntentsinfo{#1}{\contentsindentone}{\contentspoemtitlefont}%
995 {\contentsindenttwoamount}%
996 \t@xtnotesinfo{#1}%
997 \restoresinglelinesettings
998 }

```

Notice the use of token registers and `\edef` here to concatenate the first and second lines.

```

999 \newcommand{\poemtitlemiddleline}[1]{%
1000 \middlelinesettings
1001 \set@p@emtitle{#1}{\par\nobreak}{\poemtitlefont}%
1002 {\relax}{\nobreak\par\nobreak}{\z@}%
1003 \c@ntentsinfo{#1}{\contentsindenttwo}{\contentspoemtitlefont}%
1004 {\contentsindentthreeamount}%
1005 \t@xtnotesinfo{#1}%
1006 \restoresinglelinesettings
1007 }
1008 \newcommand{\poemtitlelastline}[1]{%
1009 \lastlinesettings
1010 \set@p@emtitle{#1}{\par\nobreak}{\poemtitlefont}%
1011 {\relax}{\nobreak\par\afterpoemtitleskip\nobreak}{\z@}%
1012 \c@ntentsinfo{#1}{\contentsindenttwo}{\contentspoemtitlefont}%
1013 {\contentsindentthreeamount}%
1014 \t@xtnotesinfo{#1}%
1015 \restoresinglelinesettings
1016 }

```

Titles for sections of poems, and multi-line titles of sections of poems

```

\poemsectiontitle
\poemsectiontitlefirstline 1017 \newcommand{\poemsectiontitle}[1]{%
\poemsectiontitlemiddleline 1018 \set@p@emtitle{#1}{\poemtitlepenalty}{\subsectiontitlefont}%
\poemsectiontitlelastline 1019 {\titleindent}{\nobreak\par\nobreak\afterpoemtitleskip\nobreak}%
1020 {\titleindentamount}%
1021 \c@ntentsinfo{#1}{\contentsindenttwo}{\contentspoemtitlefont}%
1022 {\contentsindentthreamount}%
1023 \t@xtnotesinfo{#1}%
1024 }
1025 \newcommand{\poemsectiontitlefirstline}[1]{%
1026 \firstlinesettings
1027 \set@p@emtitle{#1}{\multilinetitlepenalty}{\subsectiontitlefont}%
1028 {\titleindent}{\nobreak\par\nobreak}{\titleindentamount}%
1029 \c@ntentsinfo{#1}{\contentsindenttwo}{\contentspoemtitlefont}%
1030 {\contentsindentthreamount}%
1031 \t@xtnotesinfo{#1}%
1032 \restoresinglelinesettings
1033 }
1034 \newcommand{\poemsectiontitlemiddleline}[1]{%
1035 \middlelinesettings
1036 \set@p@emtitle{#1}{\relax}{\subsectiontitlefont}%
1037 {\titleindent}{\nobreak\par\nobreak}{\titleindentamount}%
1038 \c@ntentsinfo{#1}{\contentsindentthree}{\contentspoemtitlefont}%
1039 {\contentsindentfouramount}%
1040 \t@xtnotesinfo{#1}%
1041 \restoresinglelinesettings
1042 }
1043 \newcommand{\poemsectiontitlelastline}[1]{%
1044 \lastlinesettings
1045 \set@p@emtitle{#1}{\par\nobreak}{\subsectiontitlefont}%
1046 {\titleindent}{\nobreak\par\afterpoemtitleskip\nobreak}%
1047 {\titleindentamount}%
1048 \c@ntentsinfo{#1}{\contentsindentthree}{\contentspoemtitlefont}%
1049 {\contentsindentfouramount}%
1050 \t@xtnotesinfo{#1}%
1051 \restoresinglelinesettings
1052 }

\poemsectiontitlenocontents
\poemsectionbaretitle 1053 \newcommand{\poemsectiontitlenocontents}[1]{%
\poemsubsectiontitle 1054 \sequencesubsectiontitlenocontents{#1}}%
\poemtitlenotitle 1055 \newcommand{\poemfirstsectiontitle}[1]{%
\poemtitlenotitleitalic 1056 \set@p@emtitle{#1}{\par\nobreak}{\subsectiontitlefont}%
1057 {\titleindent}{\nobreak\par\nobreak\afterpoemtitleskip\nobreak}%
1058 {\titleindentamount}%
1059 \c@ntentsinfo{#1}{\contentsindenttwo}{\contentspoemtitlefont}%
1060 {\contentsindentthreamount}%
1061 \t@xtnotesinfo{#1}%
1062 }

```

```

1063 \newcommand{\poemfirstsectiontitlebaretitle}[1]{%
1064 \set@p@emtitle{#1}{\par\nobreak}{\subsectiontitlefont}%
1065 {\titleindent}{\nobreak\par\nobreak\afterpoemtitleskip\nobreak}%
1066 {\titleindentamount}}
1067 \newcommand{\poemsectiontitlebaretitle}[1]{%
1068 \set@p@emtitle{#1}{\poemtitlepenalty}{\subsectiontitlefont}%
1069 {\titleindent}{\nobreak\par\nobreak\afterpoemtitleskip\nobreak}%
1070 {\titleindentamount}}
1071 }
1072 \newcommand{\poemsubsectiontitle}[1]{%
1073 \set@p@emtitle{#1}{\poemtitlepenalty}{\subsectiontitlefont}%
1074 {\titleindent\titleindent}{\nobreak\par\nobreak\afterpoemtitleskip\nobreak}%
1075 {\titleindenttwoamount}}
1076 \c@contentsinfo{#1}{\contentsindentthree}{\contentspoemtitlefont}%
1077 {\contentsindentfouramount}}
1078 \t@xtnotesinfo{#1}%
1079 }
1080 \newcommand{\poemtitlenotitle}[1]{%
1081 \m@kep@emlabel
1082 \m@ken@teholder{#1}%
1083 \c@contentsinfo{#1}{\contentsindentone}{\contentspoemtitlefont}%
1084 {\contentsindenttwoamount}}
1085 \t@xtnotesinfo{#1}%
1086 }
1087 \newcommand{\poemtitlenotitleitalic}[2]{%
1088 \poemtitlenotitle{1}}

```

### 20.13.2 Poetic Sequences: Setting the Main Title

`\sequencetitle` Variants here for multiple line titles and titles with font commands. Also some all-purpose kludges to work around other problems.

```

1089 \newcommand{\sequencetitle}[1]{
1090 \set@p@emtitle{#1}{\sequencetitlepenalty}{\sequencetitlefont}
1091 {\relax}{\nobreak\par\nobreak\aftersequencetitleskip\nobreak}{\z@}
1092 \putpagenumberincontentsfalse
1093 \c@contentsinfo{#1}{\contentsindentone}{\contentssequencetitlefont}
1094 {\contentsindenttwoamount}
1095 \putpagenumberincontentstrue
1096 \t@xtnotesinfo{#1}
1097 }

```

`\sequencetitlefirstline` To set the title of a poetic sequence if it requires several lines to do so.

```

\sequencetitlemiddleline 1098 \newcommand{\sequencetitlefirstline}[1]{
\sequencetitlelastline 1099 \firstlinesettings
1100 \set@p@emtitle{#1}{\multilinesequencepenalty}{\sequencetitlefont}
1101 {\relax}{\nobreak\par\nobreak}{\z@}
1102 \c@contentsinfo{#1}{\contentsindentone}{\contentssequencetitlefont}
1103 {\contentsindenttwoamount}
1104 \t@xtnotesinfo{#1}

```

```

1105 \restoresinglelinesettings
1106 }
1107 \newcommand{\sequencetitlemiddleline}[1]{
1108 \middlelinesettings
1109 \set@p@emtitle{#1}{\par\nobreak}{\sequencetitlefont}
1110 {\relax}{\nobreak\par\nobreak}{\z@}
1111 \c@ntentsinfo{#1}{\contentsindenttwo}{\contentssequencetitlefont}
1112 {\contentsindentthreamount}
1113 \t@xtnotesinfo{#1}
1114 \restoresinglelinesettings
1115 }
1116 \newcommand{\sequencetitlelastline}[1]{
1117 \lastlinesettings
1118 \set@p@emtitle{#1}{\par\nobreak}{\sequencetitlefont}
1119 {\relax}{\nobreak\par\aftersequencetitleskip\nobreak}{\z@}
1120 \c@ntentsinfo{#1}{\contentsindenttwo}{\contentssequencetitlefont}
1121 {\contentsindentthreamount}
1122 \t@xtnotesinfo{#1}
1123 \restoresinglelinesettings
1124 }

```

### 20.13.3 Sections of poetic sequences

`\sequencesectiontitle` First, the easy case: a simple section of a poetic sequence.

```

1125 \newcommand{\sequencesectiontitle}[1]{
1126 \set@p@emtitle{#1}{\poemtitlepenalty}{\poemtitlefont}
1127 {\titleindent}{\nobreak\par\nobreak\afterpoemtitleskip\nobreak}
1128 {\titleindentamount}
1129 \c@ntentsinfo{#1}{\contentsindenttwo}{\contentspoemtitlefont}
1130 {\contentsindentthreamount}
1131 \t@xtnotesinfo{#1}
1132 }

```

`\sequencefirstsectiontitle` The first poem in a sequence is a special case.

```

1133 \newcommand{\sequencefirstsectiontitle}[1]{
1134 \set@p@emtitle{#1}{\par\nobreak\afterpoemtitleskip}{\poemtitlefont}
1135 {\titleindent}{\nobreak\par\nobreak\afterpoemtitleskip\nobreak}
1136 {\titleindentamount}
1137 \c@ntentsinfo{#1}{\contentsindenttwo}{\contentspoemtitlefont}
1138 {\contentsindentthreamount}
1139 \t@xtnotesinfo{#1}
1140 }

```

`\sequencesectiontitlenonotes` If you don't have any notes on a sequence section, it seems a shame to open an entry in the textual notes for that section:

```

1141 \newcommand{\sequencetitelnonotes}[1]{
1142 \set@p@emtitle{#1}{\par\nobreak}{\sequencetitlefont}
1143 {\relax}{\nobreak\par\aftersequencetitleskip\nobreak}{\z@}
1144 \c@ntentsinfo{#1}{\contentsindenttwo}{\contentssequencetitlefont}

```

```

1145 {\contentsindentthreamount}
1146 %\t@xtnotesinfo{#1}
1147 }
1148 \newcommand{\sequencesectiontitlenonotes}[1]{
1149 \set@p@emtitle{#1}{\poemtitlepenalty}{\poemtitlefont}
1150 {\titleindent}{\nobreak\par\nobreak\afterpoemtitleskip\nobreak}
1151 {\titleindentamount}
1152 \c@ntentsinfo{#1}{\contentsindenttwo}{\contentspoemtitlefont}
1153 {\contentsindentthreamount}
1154 %\t@xtnotesinfo{#1}
1155 }

```

For multiple line titles of sequence sections

```

1156 \newcommand{\sequencesectiontitlefirstline}[1]{
1157 \firstlinesettings
1158 \set@p@emtitle{#1}{\multilinetitlepenalty}{\poemtitlefont}
1159 {\titleindent}{\nobreak\par\nobreak}{\titleindentamount}
1160 \c@ntentsinfo{#1}{\contentsindenttwo}{\contentspoemtitlefont}
1161 {\contentsindentthreamount}
1162 \t@xtnotesinfo{#1}
1163 \restoresinglelinesettings
1164 }
1165 \newcommand{\sequencesectiontitlemiddleline}[1]{
1166 \middlelinesettings
1167 \set@p@emtitle{#1}{\par\nobreak}{\poemtitlefont}
1168 {\titleindent}{\nobreak\par\nobreak}{\titleindentamount}
1169 \c@ntentsinfo{#1}{\contentsindentthree}{\contentspoemtitlefont}
1170 {\contentsindentfouramount}
1171 \t@xtnotesinfo{#1}
1172 \restoresinglelinesettings
1173 }
1174 \newcommand{\sequencesectiontitlelastline}[1]{
1175 \lastlinesettings
1176 \set@p@emtitle{#1}{\par\nobreak}{\poemtitlefont}
1177 {\titleindent}{\nobreak\par\afterpoemtitleskip\nobreak}{\titleindentamount}
1178 \c@ntentsinfo{#1}{\contentsindentthree}{\contentspoemtitlefont}
1179 {\contentsindentfouramount}
1180 \t@xtnotesinfo{#1}
1181 \restoresinglelinesettings
1182 }

```

The following macros are to kludge around situations where the section title is just a number. This macro has two arguments. Originally, the first was the title of the section. The second is the title of the sequence as a whole. I've retained the second argument for backward compatibility with earlier versions, but you can set it to anything, since it's discarded now.

```

1183 \newcommand{\sequencefirstsectiontitlenocontents}[2]{
1184 \set@p@emtitle{#1}{\par\nobreak\afterpoemtitleskip}{\poemtitlefont}
1185 {\titleindent}{\nobreak\par\nobreak\afterpoemtitleskip\nobreak}
1186 {\titleindentamount}

```

```

1187 %\c@ntentsinfo{#1}{\contentsindenttwo}{\contentspoemtitlefont}
1188 \t@xtnotesinfo{#1}
1189 }
1190 \newcommand{\sequencesectiontitlenocontents}[2]{
1191 \set@p@emtitle{#1}{\poemtitlepenalty}{\poemtitlefont}
1192 {\titleindent}{\nobreak\par\nobreak\afterpoemtitleskip\nobreak}
1193 {\titleindentamount}
1194 %\c@ntentsinfo{#1}{\contentsindenttwo}{\contentspoemtitlefont}
1195 \t@xtnotesinfo{#1}
1196 }

```

If the first section of a sequence is a multiple line title, the following macros can handle the special problems that situation poses.

```

1197 \newcommand{\sequencefirstsectiontitlefirstline}[1]{
1198 \firstlinesettings
1199 \set@p@emtitle{#1}{\par\nobreak\afterpoemtitleskip}{\poemtitlefont}
1200 {\titleindent}{\nobreak\par\nobreak\afterpoemtitleskip\nobreak}
1201 {\titleindentamount}
1202 \c@ntentsinfo{#1}{\contentsindenttwo}{\contentspoemtitlefont}
1203 {\contentsindentthreamount}
1204 \t@xtnotesinfo{#1}
1205 \restoresinglelinesettings
1206 }
1207 \newcommand{\sequencefirstsectiontitlemiddleline}[1]{
1208 \sequencesectiontitlemiddleline{#1}}
1209
1210 \newcommand{\sequencefirstsectiontitlelastline}[1]
1211 {\sequencesectiontitlelastline{#1}}
1212
1213 \newcommand{\sequencefirstsectiontitlenonotes}[1]{
1214 \set@p@emtitle{#1}{\par\nobreak\afterpoemtitleskip}{\poemtitlefont}
1215 {\titleindent}{\nobreak\par\nobreak\afterpoemtitleskip\nobreak}
1216 {\titleindentamount}
1217 \c@ntentsinfo{#1}{\contentsindenttwo}{\contentspoemtitlefont}
1218 {\contentsindentthreamount}
1219 %\t@xtnotesinfo{#1}
1220 }

```

`\sequencesectionsubtle`

```

\poemsubtle 1221 \newcommand{\sequencesectionsubtle}[1]{\subsectionfont \hbox{\titleindent #1}}
1222 \nobreak\par\nobreak\afterpoemtitleskip\nobreak
1223 }
1224 \newcommand{\poemsubtle}[1]{\sequencesectionsubtle{#1}}
1225 }

```

Another (former) kludge for special situations:

```

1226 \newcommand{\sequencesectiontitleitalicnonotes}[2]
1227 {\sequencesectiontitlenonotes{#1}}
1228 }

```

Italic titles used to require two arguments. These commands are retained only for backward compatibility.

`\sequencesectiontitleitalic`

```

1229 \newcommand{\sequencesectiontitleitalic}[2]{
1230 \sequencesectiontitle{#1}}
1231 \newcommand{\sequencesectiontitlefirstlineitalic}[2]
1232 {\sequencesectiontitlefirstline{#1}}
1233 \newcommand{\sequencesectiontitlebaretitle}[1]{
1234 \set@p@emtitle{#1}{\poemtitlepenalty}{\poemtitlefont}
1235 {\titleindent}{\nobreak\par\nobreak\afterpoemtitleskip\nobreak}{\titleindentamount}
1236 }

```

#### 20.13.4 Subsections of sequences

`\sequencesubsectiontitle` Continuing several levels down: macros for setting subsections and subsubsections of sequences.

```

1237 \newcommand{\sequencesubsectiontitle}[1]{
1238 \set@p@emtitle{#1}{\poemtitlepenalty}{\subsectiontitlefont}
1239 {\titleindent\titleindent}{\nobreak\par\nobreak\afterpoemtitleskip\nobreak}
1240 {\titleindenttwoamount}
1241 \c@ntentsinfo{#1}{\contentsindentthree}{\contentspoemtitlefont}
1242 {\contentsindentfouramount}
1243 \t@xtnotesinfo{#1}
1244 }
1245 \newcommand{\sequencesubsectiontitlenocontents}[1]{
1246 \set@p@emtitle{#1}{\poemtitlepenalty}{\subsectiontitlefont}
1247 {\titleindent\titleindent}{\nobreak\par\nobreak\afterpoemtitleskip\nobreak}
1248 {\titleindenttwoamount}
1249 \c@ntentsinfo{#1}{\contentsindentthree}{\contentspoemtitlefont}{\contentsindentfouramount}
1250 \t@xtnotesinfo{#1}
1251 }
1252 \newcommand{\sequencefirstsubsectiontitle}[1]
1253 {\set@p@emtitle{#1}{\par\nobreak}{\subsectiontitlefont}
1254 {\titleindent\titleindent}{\nobreak\par\nobreak\afterpoemtitleskip\nobreak}
1255 {\titleindenttwoamount}
1256 \c@ntentsinfo{#1}{\contentsindentthree}{\contentspoemtitlefont}
1257 {\contentsindentfouramount}
1258 \t@xtnotesinfo{#1}
1259 }
1260 \newcommand{\sequencefirstsubsectiontitlenocontents}[1]
1261 {\set@p@emtitle{#1}{\par\nobreak}{\subsectiontitlefont}
1262 {\titleindent\titleindent}{\nobreak\par\nobreak\afterpoemtitleskip\nobreak}
1263 {\titleindenttwoamount}
1264 \c@ntentsinfo{#1}{\contentsindentthree}{\contentspoemtitlefont}
1265 %{\contentsindentfouramount}
1266 \t@xtnotesinfo{#1}
1267 }
1268 \newcommand{\sequencesubsectiontitlefirstline}[1]{

```



```

1269 \firstlinesettings
1270 \set@p@emtitle{#1}{\multilinetitlepenalty}{\subsectiontitlefont}
1271 {\titleindent\titleindent}{\nobreak\par\nobreak}{\titleindenttwoamount}
1272 \c@ntentsinfo{#1}{\contentsindentthree}{\contentspoemtitlefont}
1273 {\contentsindentfouramount}
1274 \t@xtnotesinfo{#1}
1275 \restoresinglelinesettings
1276 }
1277 \newcommand{\sequencesubsectiontitlemiddleline}[1]{
1278 \middlelinesettings
1279 \set@p@emtitle{#1}{\nobreak}{\subsectiontitlefont}
1280 {\titleindent\titleindent}{\nobreak\par\nobreak}{\titleindenttwoamount}
1281 \c@ntentsinfo{#1}{\contentsindentfour}{\contentspoemtitlefont}
1282 {\contentsindentfiveamount}
1283 \t@xtnotesinfo{#1}
1284 \restoresinglelinesettings
1285 }
1286 \newcommand{\sequencesubsectiontitlelastline}[1]{
1287 \lastlinesettings
1288 \set@p@emtitle{#1}{\nobreak}{\subsectiontitlefont}
1289 {\titleindent\titleindent}{\nobreak\par\afterpoemtitleskip\nobreak}
1290 {\titleindenttwoamount}
1291 \c@ntentsinfo{#1}{\contentsindentfour}{\contentspoemtitlefont}
1292 {\contentsindentfiveamount}
1293 \t@xtnotesinfo{#1}
1294 \restoresinglelinesettings
1295 }
1296 \newcommand{\sequencesubsubsectiontitle}[1]{
1297 \set@p@emtitle{#1}{\poemtitlepenalty}{\subsectiontitlefont}
1298 {\titleindent\titleindent\titleindent}{\nobreak\par\nobreak\afterpoemtitleskip\nobreak}
1299 {\nobreak\par\nobreak\afterpoemtitleskip\nobreak}
1300 {\titleindentthreeamount}
1301 \c@ntentsinfo{#1}{\contentsindentfour}{\contentspoemtitlefont}
1302 {\contentsindentfiveamount}
1303 \t@xtnotesinfo{#1}
1304 }
1305 \newcommand{\sequencesubsubsectiontitlenocontents}[1]{
1306 \set@p@emtitle{#1}{\poemtitlepenalty}{\subsectiontitlefont}
1307 {\titleindent\titleindent\titleindent}{\nobreak\par\nobreak\afterpoemtitleskip\nobreak}
1308 {\titleindentthreeamount}
1309 %\c@ntentsinfo{#1}{\contentsindentfour}{\contentspoemtitlefont}
1310 %{\contentsindentfiveamount}
1311 \t@xtnotesinfo{#1}
1312 }
1313 \newcommand{\sequencefirstsubsubsectiontitlenocontents}[1]{
1314 \set@p@emtitle{#1}{\nobreak\par\nobreak}{\subsectiontitlefont}
1315 {\titleindent\titleindent\titleindent}{\nobreak\par\nobreak\afterpoemtitleskip\nobreak}
1316 {\titleindentthreeamount}
1317 %\c@ntentsinfo{#1}{\contentsindentfour}{\contentspoemtitlefont}{\contentsindentfiveamount}
1318 \t@xtnotesinfo{#1}

```

```

1319 }
1320
1321
1322 \newcommand{\sequencefirstsubsectiontitlefirstline}[1]{
1323 \firstlinesettings
1324 \set@p@emtitle{#1}{\par\nobreak}{\subsectionfont}
1325 {\titleindent\titleindent}{\nobreak\par\nobreak}{\titleindenttwoamount}
1326 \c@ntentsinfo{#1}{\contentsindentthree}{\contentspoemfont}
1327 {\contentsindentfouramount}
1328 \t@xtnotesinfo{#1}
1329 \restoresinglelinesettings
1330 }
1331 \newcommand{\sequencefirstsubsectiontitlemiddleline}[1]{
1332 \sequencesubsectiontitlemiddleline{#1}}
1333 \newcommand{\sequencefirstsubsectiontitlelastline}[1]{
1334 \sequencesubsectiontitlelastline{#1}}

```

Interjections in sequences, as in Robert Penn Warren's *Or Else*.

```

1335 \newcommand{\interjectiontitlefirstline}[1]{
1336 \sequencefirstsubsectiontitlefirstline{#1}}
1337 \newcommand{\interjectiontitlelastline}[1]{
1338 \sequencefirstsubsectiontitlelastline{#1}
1339 }
1340 \newcommand{\interjectiontitlemiddleline}[1]{
1341 \sequencefirstsubsectionmiddleline{#1}
1342 }

```

`\setmargpoemtitle` Titles with a marginal reference to the notes giving the page in the notes where a comment on the poem appears, as in Altenberg's Heredia edition. `\setmargpoemtitle` takes as its second argument anything you want to add to the line while the title is being processed. `\JHpoemtitle` is just `\setmargpoemtitle` with the second argument passed to `\JHlabel`, which actually makes the marginal mark.

```

1343 \newcommand{\setmargpoemtitle}[2]{%
1344 \set@margp@emtitle{#1}{\poemtitlepenalty}{\poemtitlefont}%
1345 {\relax}{\nobreak\par\nobreak\afterpoemtitleskip\nobreak}{\z@}{#2}%
1346 \c@ntentsinfo{#1}{\contentsindentone}{\contentspoemfont}%
1347 {\contentsindenttwoamount}%
1348 \t@xtnotesinfo{#1}%
1349 \sources{\label{#2}}%
1350 }
1351 \newcommand{\set@margp@emtitle}[7]{\setlength{\titleentryoverrun}{#6}%
1352 {#2}%
1353 {#3 \begin{titleentryenvironment}%
1354 {#4 #1 #7}\end{titleentryenvironment}}%
1355 {#5}%
1356 \m@kep@emlabel%
1357 \m@ken@teholder{#1}%
1358 \setlength{\titleentryoverrun}{\z@}}

```

`\JHpoemtitle` Macros to set marginal line references.

```
1359 % \newcommand{\JHpoemtitle}[2]{%
1360 % \setmargpoemtitle{#1}{\JHlabel{#2}}%
1361 % }
1362 \newcommand{\JHpoemtitle}[2]{%
1363 \set@margp@emtitle{#1}{\poemtitlepenalty}{\poemtitlefont}%
1364 {\relax}{\nobreak\par\nobreak\afterpoemtitleskip\nobreak}{\z@}%
1365 {\JHlabel{#2}}%
1366 \c@ntentsinfo{#1}{\contentsindentone}{\contentspoemtitlefont}%
1367 {\contentsindenttwoamount}%
1368 \t@xtnotesinfo{#1}%
1369 \sources{\label{#2}}%
1370 }
1371 \newcommand{\JHprosesectiontitle}[2]{%
1372 \set@margp@emtitle{#1}{\poemtitlepenalty}{\poemtitlefont}%
1373 {\relax}{\nobreak\par\nobreak\afterpoemtitleskip\nobreak}{\z@}%
1374 {\JHlabel{#2}}%
1375 \c@ntentsinfo{#1}{\contentsindentone}{\contentspoemtitlefont}%
1376 {\contentsindenttwoamount}%
1377 \t@xtnotesinfo{#1}%
1378 \sources{\label{#2}}%
1379 }
1380 \newcommand{\JHlabel}[1]{%
1381 \marginpar{\scriptsize{\the\marginrefmarker~p.~\pageref{#1}}}}
```

`\JHsequencetitle` Macros to set marginal page references for sequences, sequence sections, poem sections, poem subtitles, dedications, and epigraphs.

```
1382 \newcommand{\JHsequencetitle}[2]{%
1383 \set@margp@emtitle{#1}{\sequencetitlepenalty}{\sequencetitlefont}%
1384 {\relax}{\nobreak\par\nobreak\aftersequencetitleskip\nobreak}{\z@}%
1385 {\JHlabel{#2}}%
1386 \putpagenumberincontentsfalse%
1387 \c@ntentsinfo{#1}{\contentsindentone}{\contentssequencetitlefont}%
1388 {\contentsindenttwoamount}%
1389 \putpagenumberincontentstrue%
1390 \t@xtnotesinfo{#1}%
1391 \sources{\label{#2}}%
1392 }
1393 \newcommand{\JHsequencesectiontitle}[2]{%
1394 \set@margp@emtitle{#1}{\poemtitlepenalty}{\poemtitlefont}%
1395 {\titleindent}{\nobreak\par\nobreak\afterpoemtitleskip\nobreak}%
1396 {\titleindentamount}{\JHlabel{#2}}%
1397 \c@ntentsinfo{#1}{\contentsindenttwo}{\contentspoemtitlefont}%
1398 {\contentsindentthreeamount}%
1399 \t@xtnotesinfo{#1}%
1400 \sources{\label{#2}}%
1401 }
1402 \newcommand{\JHsequencefirstsectiontitle}[2]{%
1403 \set@margp@emtitle{#1}{\par\nobreak\afterpoemtitleskip}{\poemtitlefont}%
1404 }
```

```

1404 {\titleindent}{\nobreak\par\nobreak\afterpoemtitleskip\nobreak}%
1405 {\titleindentamount}{\JHlabel{#2}}%
1406 \c@contentsinfo{#1}{\contentsindenttwo}{\contentspoemtitlefont}%
1407 {\contentsindentthreamount}%
1408 \t@xtnotesinfo{#1}%
1409 \sources{\label{#2}}%
1410 }
1411 \newcommand{\JHpoemsectiontitle}[2]{%
1412 \set@margin@emtitle{#1}{\poemtitlepenalty}{\subsectiontitlefont}%
1413 {\titleindent}{\nobreak\par\nobreak\afterpoemtitleskip\nobreak}%
1414 {\titleindentamount}{\JHlabel{#2}}%
1415 \c@contentsinfo{#1}{\contentsindenttwo}{\contentspoemtitlefont}%
1416 {\contentsindentthreamount}%
1417 \t@xtnotesinfo{#1}%
1418 \sources{\label{#2}}%
1419 }
1420 \newcommand{\JHpoemfirstsectiontitle}[2]{%
1421 \set@margin@emtitle{#1}{\par\nobreak}{\subsectiontitlefont}%
1422 {\titleindent}{\nobreak\par\nobreak\afterpoemtitleskip\nobreak}%
1423 {\titleindentamount}{\JHlabel{#2}}%
1424 \c@contentsinfo{#1}{\contentsindenttwo}{\contentspoemtitlefont}%
1425 {\contentsindentthreamount}%
1426 \t@xtnotesinfo{#1}%
1427 \sources{\label{#2}}%
1428 }
1429 \newcommand{\JHsequencesectionssubtitle}[2]{%
1430 \set@margin@emtitle{#1}{\par\nobreak}{\subsectiontitlefont}%
1431 {\titleindent}{\nobreak\par\nobreak\afterpoemtitleskip\nobreak}%
1432 {\titleindentamount}{\JHlabel{#2}}%
1433 \sources{\label{#2}}%
1434 }
1435 \newcommand{\JHpoemsubtitle}[2]{\JHsequencesectionssubtitle{#1}{#2}}
1436 }
1437 \newcommand{\JHdedication}[2]{\nopagebreak\afterpoemtitleskip\begin{epigraphquote}%
1438 \emph{#1}\JHlabel{#2}\end{epigraphquote}%
1439 \sources{\label{#2}}\afterpoemtitleskip\nopagebreak}
1440 \newcommand{\JHepigraph}[2]{\nopagebreak\afterpoemtitleskip\begin{epigraphquote}%
1441 \emph{#1}\JHlabel{#2}\end{epigraphquote}%
1442 \sources{\label{#2}}\afterpoemtitleskip\nopagebreak}

```

`\backmattersectiontitle` Macros to set the titles of back matter sections such as textual notes.

```

1443 \newcommand{\backmattersectiontitle}[1]{%
1444 \set@p@emtitle{#1}{\poemtitlepenalty}{\volumetitlefont}%
1445 {\relax}{\backmattersink}{\z@}%
1446 \c@contentsinfo{#1}{\contentsindentone}{\contentspoemtitlefont}%
1447 {\contentsindenttwoamount}%
1448 \t@xtnotesinfo{#1}
1449 }

```

`\marginreftextnote` Macros to set marginal page references showing where in the apparatus a comment

upon the marked line is to be found. `\margrefspecial{}` is for occasions when you might need to set the label by hand. For instance, suppose you have several textnotes on a line, and the note you wish to draw attention to is on a different page from the other notes. `\margreftextnote` under those circumstances will point only to the first note. Use `\margrefspecial` to point to the other note, giving `\margrefspecial` a unique argument, and opening that note with a command using the same argument.

```

1450 \newcounter{margrefnumber}
1451 \setcounter{margrefnumber}{1}
1452 \newtoks{\margrefmarker}
1453 \margrefmarker={\dag}
1454 \newcommand{\setmargrefmarker}[1]{\margrefmarker={#1}}
1455 \newcommand{\makemargreflabel}{\string\label\string{margref\themargrefnumber\string}}
1456 \newcommand{\setmargref}
1457 {\marginpar{\scriptsize {\the\margrefmarker~p.~\pageref{margref\themargrefnumber}}}}
1458 }
1459 \newcommand{\margreftextnote}{%
1460 \iftextnoteson\addtocounter{margrefnumber}{1}%
1461 \immediate\write\textnotes{\makemargreflabel}%
1462 \setmargref\else\relax\fi%
1463 }
1464 \newcommand{\margrefexplanatory}{%
1465 \ifexplanon\addtocounter{margrefnumber}{1}%
1466 \immediate\write\explanations{\makemargreflabel}%
1467 \setmargref\else\relax\fi%
1468 }
1469 \newcommand{\margrefemendation}{%
1470 \ifemendationson\addtocounter{margrefnumber}{1}%
1471 \immediate\write\emendations{\makemargreflabel}%
1472 \setmargref\else\relax\fi%
1473 }
1474 \newcommand{\margrefspecial}[1]{%
1475 \marginpar{\scriptsize {\the\margrefmarker~p.~\pageref{#1}}}}
1476 }

```

To change other title making commands to produce titles which add something while processing the title, you should: 1. add one to the number of arguments it uses 2. replace the use of `\set@p@emtitle` with `\set@margp@emtitle` 3. add `{#2}` or `\JHlabel{#2}` or whatever as the last (seventh) argument to `\set@margp@emtitle`. So, to change `\sequencetitle{}` to `\JHsequencetitle{}` start with:

```

\newcommand{\sequencetitle}[1]{
\set@p@emtitle{#1}{\sequencetitlepenalty}{\sequencetitlefont}
{\relax}{\nobreak\par\nobreak\aftersequencetitleskip\nobreak}{\z@}
\putpagenumberincontentsfalse
\c@ntentsinfo{#1}{\contentsindentone}{\contentssequencetitlefont}
{\contentsindenttwoamount}
\putpagenumberincontentstrue

```

```
\t@xtnotesinfo{#1}
}
```

and change it to

```
\catcode'\@=11
\newcommand{\JHsequencetitle}[2]{
\set@margin@emtitle{#1}{\sequencetitlepenalty}{\sequencetitlefont}
{\relax}{\nobreak\par\nobreak\aftersequencetitleskip\nobreak}{\z@}
{\JHlabel{#2}}\putpagenumberincontentsfalse
\c@ntentsinfo{#1}{\contentsindentone}{\contentssequencetitlefont}
{\contentsindenttwoamount}
\putpagenumberincontentstrue
\t@xtnotesinfo{#1}
}
\catcode'\@=12
```

## 20.14 Epigraphs, headnotes, attributions, dedications

Notice that epigraphs to volumes are handled differently from epigraphs to poems.

```
\epigraph
\headnote 1477 \newcommand{\epigraph}[1]{\nopagebreak\afterpoemtitleskip\begin{epigraphquote}
\attribution 1478 \emph{#1}\end{epigraphquote}\afterpoemtitleskip\nopagebreak}
\poemdedication 1479 \newcommand{\headnote}[1]{\epigraph{#1}}
\volume dedication 1480 \newcommand{\attribution}[1]{\nopagebreak\afterpoemtitleskip\begin{epigraphquote}
\volumeepigraph 1481 {\small\emph{#1}}\end{epigraphquote}\afterpoemtitleskip\nopagebreak}
\volumeattribution 1482 \newcommand{\poemdedication}[1]{\nopagebreak\afterpoemtitleskip\begin{epigraphquote}
1483 \emph{#1}\end{epigraphquote}\afterpoemtitleskip\nopagebreak}
1484 \providecommand{\dedication}[1]{\poemdedication{#1}}
1485 \newcommand{\volume dedication}[1]{\par\bigskip\begin{volumetitlepagequote}
1486 \emph{#1}\end{volumetitlepagequote}}
1487 \newcommand{\volumeepigraph}[1]{\par\bigskip\begin{volumetitlepagequote}
1488 \emph{#1}\end{volumetitlepagequote}}
1489 \newcommand{\volumeattribution}[1]{\par\smallskip\begin{volumetitlepagequote}
1490 {\small \emph{#1}}\end{volumetitlepagequote}}
```

## 20.15 Tools used for making note sections

The main tool is a dirty trick borrowed from John Lavagnino's package for endnotes, `endnotes`, which allows for writing out literal characters to an external file. The trick involves redefining the space character as the newline character and treating the text of the note as the body of a macro that `\meaning` specifies. The result is that the text is written to the external file in a long ribbon one word wide.

```
1491 \def\strip#1>{}
1492 \newcommand{\literaltextnote}[1]{\iftextnotesatend
```

```

1493     \begingroup
1494         \def\next{#1}%
1495         \newlinechar='40
1496         \immediate\write\textnotes{\expandafter\strip\meaning\next}%
1497     \endgroup\fi
1498 }
1499 \newcommand{\literalemend}[1]{\ifemendationsatend
1500     \begingroup
1501         \def\next{#1}%
1502         \newlinechar='40
1503         \immediate\write\emendations{\expandafter\strip\meaning\next}%
1504     \endgroup\fi
1505 }
1506 \newcommand{\literalexplain}[1]{\ifexplanatend
1507     \begingroup
1508         \def\next{#1}%
1509         \newlinechar='40
1510         \immediate\write\explanations{\expandafter\strip\meaning\next}%
1511     \endgroup\fi
1512 }
1513 \newcommand{\literalcontents}[1]{\ifpoemcontentson
1514     \begingroup
1515         \def\next{#1}%
1516         \newlinechar='40
1517         \immediate\write\poemcontents{\expandafter\strip\meaning\next}%
1518     \endgroup\fi
1519 }
1520 \newcommand{\literaltextnoteshort}[1]{
1521 \iftextnotesatend
1522     \begingroup
1523         \def\next{#1}%
1524         \immediate\write\textnotes{\expandafter\strip\meaning\next}%
1525     \endgroup\fi}
1526 \newcommand{\literalemendshort}[1]{\ifemendationsatend
1527     \begingroup
1528         \def\next{#1}%
1529         \immediate\write\emendations{\expandafter\strip\meaning\next}%
1530     \endgroup\fi}
1531 \newcommand{\literalexplainshort}[1]{\ifexplanatend
1532     \begingroup
1533         \def\next{#1}%
1534         \immediate\write\explanations{\expandafter\strip\meaning\next}%
1535     \endgroup\fi}
1536 \newcommand{\literalcontentsshort}[1]{\ifpoemcontentson
1537     \begingroup
1538         \immediate\write\poemcontents{\expandafter\strip\meaning\next}%
1539     \endgroup\fi}
1540 \newcommand{\sameword}{\sim$}
1541 \newcommand{\missingpunct}{\${}_-\{\wedge\}$}

```

`\pmccheckifinteger` `\pmccheckifinteger{<num>}` checks if `<num>` is an integer. If it is, then `\ifinteger` is set TRUE, otherwise it is set FALSE. (Code taken from memoir class, and based on Donald Arseneau's `\Lpack{cite}` package).

```

1542 \newcommand{\pmccheckifinteger}[1]{%
1543   \protected@edef\vsa{#1}%
1544   \ifcat _\ifnum9<1\pmcgobm{#1} _\else A\fi
1545     \integertrue%
1546   \else
1547     \integerfalse%
1548   \fi%
1549 }
1550 \newif\ifinteger
1551 % \begin{macro}{\pmcgobm}
1552 % |\pmcgobm{|\meta{num}|}| is defined as \meta{num}. It could be defined as: \
1553 % |\newcommand{\pmcgobm}[1]{\ifx-#1\expandafter\gobm\else#1\fi}| \
1554 % which would remove a leading minus sign (hyphen) from its argument
1555 % (|gobm| = gobble minus sign).
1556 % (Code from memoir class and a posting to comp.text.tex by Donald Arseneau on 1997/07/21).
1557 %   \begin{macrocode}
1558 \newcommand{\pmcgobm}[1]{#1}

```

## 20.16 Commands to make notes and send info to contents

`\setlemmarange` `\setlemmarange` calculates the range of line numbers for multi-line lemmas.

```

1559 % \newcommand{\setlemmarange}[1]{
1560 %   \setcounter{lemmalines}{#1}
1561 %   \ifthenelse{\equal{\value{lemmalines}}{0}}{\rangelemmafalse}{\rangelemmatrue}
1562 %   \setcounter{lemmaend}{\theverselinenumber}
1563 %   \addtocounter{lemmaend}{\thelemmalines}
1564 % }
1565 \newcommand{\setlemmarange}[1]{%
1566   \pmccheckifinteger{#1}%
1567   \ifinteger
1568     \setcounter{lemmalines}{#1}%
1569   \ifthenelse{\equal{\value{lemmalines}}{0}}{\rangelemmafalse}{\rangelemmatrue}%
1570   \setcounter{lemmaend}{\theverselinenumber}%
1571   \addtocounter{lemmaend}{\thelemmalines}%
1572   \else
1573     \setcounterfromref{lemmaend}{#1}\rangelemmatrue
1574   \fi
1575   \makeatother}

```

`\citerange` `\citerange` sets the range of line numbers for multi-line lemmas

```

1576 \newcommand{\citerange}{%
1577   \ifrangelemma
1578     \theverselinenumber --\thelemmaend
1579   \else
1580     \theverselinenumber
1581   \fi}

```



`\resetlemmacounters` `\resetlemmacounters` resets the counts for multiline lemmas.

```
1582 \newcommand{\resetlemmacounters}{\rangelemmafalse
1583 \setcounter{lemmalines}{0}%
1584 \setcounter{lemmaend}{0}%
1585 }
```

`\checknoteheaders` `\checknoteheaders` Checks and corrects the values in the running headers of notes sections. The running headers are of the form “Notes to pages xx–yy.” Every title and every note checks whether the values in the running header should be changed. This command essentially gives a list of strings to be written on the external file for the note section. When these strings are read back in when the file is set, they make a little program that recalculates the values in the headers during the processing of every note. Also typesets the line number or line number range in notes sections.

```
1586 \newcommand{\checknoteheaders}{\string\setcounter\string{notepageholdernote\string}%
1587 \string{\thepage\string}\string\ifhmode\string\unskip\string\fi%
1588 \string\ifthenelse\string{\string\value\string{notepageholdernote\string}>%
1589 \string\value\string{notepageholdertitle\string}\string}%
1590 \string{\string\mark\string{\string\thenotepageholdernote\string}\string}%
1591 \string{\string\mark\string{\string\thenotepageholdertitle\string}\string}\string\unskip
1592 \string\unskip\string\relax\ \citerange :\string~\string\nolinebreak}%
1593
```

`\textnote` The basic `\textnote{}` command, on which everything else is based, has several parts. First, it writes out a little program on the external endnotes file which, when it is read back in when the endnotes are typeset, sets a variable with the value of the page of the line the note is commenting upon and checks to see whether that value is equal to or greater than that of previous notes on that page of notes. Depending upon the outcome of that test, it sets the value of `\mark` with the correct numbers to print the proper running header of the form “Textual Notes to pp.xx–yy.” Second, it sends the line number of the line it is a comment upon and the text of the note to the notes section. The optional first argument is the number of lines covered by a multiline lemma. If there is no optional first argument specified, the default is 0. The second argument is the text of the note, which includes the rest of the lemma, other than the line number. It is up to you to suitably abbreviate long lemmas.

```
1594 \newif\iftextnotessinglepar
1595 \newcommand{\textnote}[2][0]{%
1596 \iftextnoteson
1597   \setlemmarange{#1}%
1598 \immediate\write\textnotes{\checknoteheaders}%
1599   \literaltextnote{#2}%
1600   \iftextnotessinglepar%
1601   \literaltextnote{\par}%
1602   \fi%
1603   \fi
1604 \resetlemmacounters
1605 }
```

`\accidental` Accidentals: As it is, the command just tests to see whether accidentals are being included or not, and sets the accidental as a textnote if accidentals are being included. It would not be hard to divert accidentals to another external file in order to compile a separate list of accidentals. Accidentals, by their nature, cannot have multiline lemmas.

```
1606 \newcommand{\accidental}[1]{%
1607 \iftextnoteson%
1608 \ifincludeaccidentals%
1609 \iftextnotesatend\immediate\write\textnotes{\string\nobreak}\fi%
1610 \textnote{#1}%
1611 \iftextnotesatend\immediate\write\textnotes{\string\nobreak}\fi%
1612 \iftextnotessinglepar%
1613 \literaltextnote{\par}%
1614 \fi%
1615 \fi\fi
1616 }
```

`\tsvariant` Typescript variants. Treated like accidentals. If they are being collected, they are sent to the textual notes. Again, it would not be hard to collect them separately. Typescript variants can have multiline lemmas.

```
1617 \newcommand{\tsvariant}[2][0]{%
1618 \iftextnoteson
1619 \ifincludetypescripts%
1620 \iftextnotesatend\immediate\write\textnotes{\string\nobreak}\fi%
1621 \textnote[1]{#2}%
1622 \iftextnotesatend\immediate\write\textnotes{\string\nobreak}\fi%
1623 \fi\fi
1624 }
1625 \newcommand{\tsaccidental}[1]{\iftextnoteson\ifincludetypescripts\accidental{#1}\fi\fi}
```

`\tsentry` Typescript entries. Allows one to to selectively include or exclude typescript entries from lists of variants. If an entry begins with a comma (as it commonly will, since it will typically be a member of a list of entries, you need not put `\unskip` before the comma, since `poemscol` will do it for you. Thanks to Donald Arseneau for suggesting how to do this.

```
1626 \newcommand{\tsentry}[1]{\iftextnoteson\ifincludetypescripts{\@ifnextchar,{\unskip}{%
1627 \@ifnextchar;{\unskip}{}}%
1628 }#1}\fi\fi\unskip}
```

`\sources` `\sources{}` is essentially a `\textnote{}` with no line number and no page checking. Useful for typesetting the sources of the text (hence the name) and for sending literal characters to the endnotes file for other purposes.

```
1629 \newcommand{\sources}[1]{%
1630 \iftextnoteson
1631 \begingroup
1632 \newlinechar='40
1633 \def\next{#1}%
1634 \immediate\write\textnotes{\expandafter\strip\meaning\next}%

```

```

1635     \endgroup
1636     \iftextnotessinglepar%
1637     \literaltextnote{\par}%
1638     \fi%
1639 \fi
1640 }

```

## 20.17 Emendations and explanatory notes

The difference between these kinds of notes and ordinary `\textnotes{}` is that they must first test to see whether there have been any emendations or explanatory notes for the poem in question. If there have not been prior notes, then a new paragraph must be opened and the page number and title of the poem set in the note section.

`\titletoothernotes` `\titletoothernotes` sends the page and title information to the Emendations or Explanatory Notes sections. It is called only for the first emendation or explanatory note for a poem. It is designed so that if the user wishes to define another category of notes in which might not apply to all of the poems to be set — not all poems, for instance, have emendations — this command can be used for those notes as well.

```

1641 \newcommand{\titletoothernotes}{\string\par
1642 \ifputpagenumberinnotes%
1643 \string\argpageref\string{\@compoundlabelscratch\string}%
1644 \string\setcounterfrompageref\string{notepageholdertitle\string}%
1645 \string{\@compoundlabelscratch\string}%
1646 \fi%
1647 \string\textbf\string{\ the\fulltitleholder\string}}%

```

`\emendation`

```

1648 \newif\ifemendationssinglepar
1649 \newcommand{\emendation}[2][0]{
1650 \ifemendationsson
1651     \setlemmarange{#1}%
1652     \ifredundantemendations
1653         \iftextnoteson
1654 \ifrangelemma
1655     \textnote[#1]{#2}%
1656 \else
1657     \textnote{#2}%
1658 \fi % ifrangelemma}
1659     \iftextnotessinglepar%
1660     \literaltextnote{\par}%
1661     \fi% iftextnotesinglepar
1662     \fi %iftextnoteson
1663 \fi % ifredundantemendations
1664 \ifnoemendyet % firstemendation
1665     \firstemendation
1666     \fi %noemendyet

```

```

1667     \global\noemendyetfalse
1668 \immediate\write\emendations{\checknoteheaders}%
1669     \literate\emend{#2}%
1670     \ifemendationssinglepar%
1671     \literate\emend{\par}%
1672     \fi% ifemendationssinglepar
1673 \fi % ifemendationson
1674 \resetlemmacounters
1675 }

```

This next is an internal command, called by `\emendation`. There's no need to use it explicitly.

```

1676 \newcommand{\firstemendation}{\ifemendationsatend
1677 \immediate\write\emendations{\titletoothernotes}\fi
1678 }

```

`\explanatory` Again, `\firstexplanatory` is internal, called by `\explanatory`.

```

1679 \newif\ifexplanationssinglepar
1680 \newcommand{\explanatory}[2][0]{%
1681 \ifexplanon
1682     \setlemmarange{#1}%
1683     \ifnoexplainyet % first explanation
1684     \firstexplanatory
1685     \fi %noexplainyet
1686     \global\noexplainyetfalse
1687 \immediate\write\explanations{\checknoteheaders}%
1688     \literate\explain{#2}%
1689     \ifexplanationssinglepar%
1690     \literate\explain{\par}%
1691     \fi%
1692     \fi % ifexplanon
1693 \resetlemmacounters
1694 }
1695
1696 \newcommand{\firstexplanatory}{\ifexplanatend
1697 \immediate\write\explanations{\titletoothernotes}\fi
1698 }
1699

```

## 20.18 Making new notes sections

`\definewnotetype` This monster macro has nine sections, and does all of the things required to set up a new end notes section. If you decide to mark a new kind of note in your text with, say `\mynote`, but decide at the last moment against including those notes in your edition, simply don't issue `\putmynotes` at the point it might have appeared, and neither the notes section nor the contents entry for it will be included.

```

1700 \makeatletter
1701 \long\def\appendtomacro#1#2{%

```

```

1702 \begingroup
1703   \toks@\expandafter{#1#2}%
1704   \xdef#1{\the\toks@}%
1705 \endgroup}
1706 \makeatother
1707 \newcommand{\definewnotetype}[5]{%
1708 % 1. make an if for this kind of note and set it to true by default;
1709 % make an if for the first instance of the command per poem and set it
1710 % to false; make an if for setting the notes in single note
1711 % paragraphs and set it to false; make an if for setting
1712 % these notes in two column mode and set it to false
1713 %
1714 % Thanks to Igor Pechtchanski and Ulrich Schwarz.
1715 \expandafter\newif\csname if#1son\endcsname
1716 \global\csname #1sontrue\endcsname
1717 \expandafter\newif\csname ifno#1yet\endcsname
1718 \csname no#1yettrue\endcsname
1719 \expandafter\newif\csname if#1ssinglepar\endcsname
1720 \csname #1ssingleparfalse\endcsname
1721 \expandafter\newif\csname if#1stwocol\endcsname
1722 \csname #1stwocolfalse\endcsname
1723 % 2. open a new output stream
1724 \expandafter\newwrite\csname #1s\endcsname
1725 % 3. open a file to associate with the stream
1726 \immediate\expandafter\openout\csname #1s\endcsname=\expandafter\jobname .#2
1727 % 4. set up a literalwrite command
1728 \expandafter\newcommand\csname literal#1\endcsname[1]{
1729 \begingroup
1730 \def\next{##1}%
1731 \newlinechar='40
1732 \immediate\write\expandafter\csname #1s\endcsname{\expandafter\strip\meaning\next}%
1733 \endgroup}
1734 % 5. send heading information to output file
1735 % first, use literaltext to send commands without parameters
1736 \csname literal#1\endcsname{\flushbottom{\par\clearpage
1737   {\pagestyle{volumetitlestyle}\cleardoublepage}
1738   \thispagestyle{volumetitlestyle}}}
1739 \fancyhead{}
1740 \fancyfoot{}
1741 \fancyhead[RO,LE]{\small\textrm{\thepage}}}}
1742 % then immediate write to send the parameter for the marks in the
1743 % headers
1744 \immediate\write\csname #1s\endcsname{\string\fancyhead[CO]\string{\string\small
1745 \string{\string\em\ #3\string~\string\mymarks\string}\string}\string}}
1746 \immediate\write\csname #1s\endcsname{\string\fancyhead[CE]\string{\string\small
1747 \string{\string\em\ #3\string~\string\mymarks\string}\string}\string}}
1748 % then literal to finish the headers
1749 \csname literal#1\endcsname{\fancyfoot[C]{}
1750 \mark{3}
1751 \backmattersink}

```

```

1752 % then immediate write to send the title of the section to print at
1753 % the top of the page
1754 \immediate\write\csname #1s\endcsname{
1755 \string\setendnotessectiontitle\string{#4\string}\string{#1notes\string}}
1756 % literal write to turn hyphenation on, set the font for the note
1757 % section, and turn on two column mode (if the boolean is set)
1758 \csname literal#1\endcsname{\lefthyphenmin=2\backmatterafterheadersink
1759 \tolerance=500\language=0
1760 \normalfont \backmattertextfont}
1761 \immediate\write\csname #1s\endcsname{\string\if#1stwocol}
1762 \csname
1763 literal#1\endcsname{\begin{multicols}{2}\fi\setlength{\parindent}{-10pt}}%
1764 % \csname literal#1\endcsname{\setlength{\parindent}{2}}% problem here
1765 % 6. set up a command to write the page and title of the poem for the first
1766 % instance of this kind of note in a poem
1767 \expandafter\newcommand\csname first#1\endcsname{%
1768 \immediate\write\expandafter\csname #1s\endcsname{\titletoothernotes}%
1769 \immediate\write\csname #1s\endcsname{\string\if#1ssinglepar}%
1770 \immediate\write\csname #1s\endcsname{\string\par}%
1771 \immediate\write\csname #1s\endcsname{\string\fi}%
1772 }
1773 % 7. set up a command to write a note, complete with line numbers
1774 \expandafter\newcommand\csname #1\endcsname[2][0]{%
1775 \setlemmarange{##1}%
1776 \csname ifno#1yet\endcsname%
1777 \csname first#1\endcsname%
1778 \fi%
1779 \global\csname no#1yetfalse\endcsname%
1780 \immediate\write\expandafter\csname
1781 #1s\endcsname{\string\nobreak\string\nobreak\checknoteheaders}%
1782 \csname literal#1\endcsname{##2}%
1783 \csname if#1ssinglepar\endcsname%
1784 \csname literal#1\endcsname{\par}%
1785 \fi%
1786 \resetlemmacounters%
1787 }
1788 % prose version
1789 \expandafter\newcommand\csname prose#1\endcsname[3][0]{%
1790 \unskip\proselinelabel{##2}%
1791 \setproselemmarange{##2}{##1}%
1792 \csname ifno#1yet\endcsname%
1793 \csname first#1\endcsname%
1794 \fi%
1795 \global\csname no#1yetfalse\endcsname%
1796 \immediate\write\expandafter\csname #1s\endcsname{\checkprosenoteheaders}%
1797 \csname literal#1\endcsname{##3}%
1798 \csname if#1ssinglepar\endcsname%
1799 \csname literal#1\endcsname{\par}%
1800 \unskip%
1801 \fi%

```

```

1802 \resetlemmacounters\unskip%
1803 }
1804 % pm version
1805 \expandafter\newcommand\csname pm#1\endcsname[2][0]{%
1806     \setpmlenrange{##1}%
1807     \csname ifno#1yet\endcsname%
1808     \csname first#1\endcsname%
1809     \fi%
1810 \global\csname no#1yetfalse\endcsname%
1811 \immediate\write\expandafter\csname #1s\endcsname{\pmchecknoteheaders\string~}%
1812 \immediate\write\expandafter\csname #1s\endcsname{\pmciterange}%
1813 \csname literal#1\endcsname{##2}%
1814 \csname if#1ssinglepar\endcsname%
1815 \csname literal#1\endcsname{\par}%
1816 \fi%
1817 \pmresetlemmacounters\unskip%
1818 }
1819 % 8. modify the end of the poem environment to reset the first
1820 % command per poem boolean (so that the page and title will be set in
1821 % the notes section when the first note is called for a poem)
1822 % thanks to Heiko Oberdiek
1823 \makeatletter
1824 \appendtomacro{\endpoem}{\global\expandafter\csname no#1yettrue\endcsname}
1825 \makeatother
1826 \makeatletter
1827 \appendtomacro{\endprosesection}{\global\expandafter\csname no#1yettrue\endcsname}
1828 \makeatother
1829 \makeatletter
1830 \appendtomacro{\endpmsection}{\global\expandafter\csname no#1yettrue\endcsname}
1831 \makeatother
1832
1833 % 9. command for closing the output file
1834 % command for reading in and printing the output file
1835 \expandafter\newcommand\csname put#1s\endcsname{
1836 \newpage\hyphenationforsmall
1837 \csname if#1stwocol\endcsname%
1838 \csname literal#1\endcsname{\end{multicols}}%
1839 \fi %\iftwocol
1840 \immediate\expandafter\closeout\csname #1s\endcsname
1841 \expandafter\input \jobname.#2
1842 \ifpoemcontentson
1843 \contentsendnotestitle{#5}{#1notes}
1844 \fi
1845 }
1846 % 10. command for making a marginal mark at a line, giving the page
1847 % number in the apparatus where a note is to be found
1848 \expandafter\newcommand\csname margref#1\endcsname{%
1849 \addtocounter{margrefnumber}{1}
1850 \immediate\write\expandafter\csname #1s\endcsname{\makemargreflabel}%
1851 \setmargref

```

```
1852 }
1853 }
```

## 20.19 Prose sections

poemscol calls on lineno to do all the heavy lifting for making line numbers in prose sections and for making endnotes of various kinds for prose sections. First, set up a counter for the line number and for the modulo line number for prose sections, and set it to equal that used in verse sections. Then set the font for marginal line numbers to the size used in marginal line numbers in verse sections.

```
1854 \newcounter{proselinenum}
1855 \setcounter{proselinenum}{1}
1856 \newcounter{prosemodulo}
1857 \setcounter{prosemodulo}{\value{lineindexrepeat}}
1858 \addtocounter{prosemodulo}{1}
1859 \newcommand{\setprosemodulo}[1]{\modulolinenumbers[#1]}
```

Then commands for setting titles of prose sections. These are just versions of `\poemtitle`. Fancier versions will follow if there is need.

```
1860 \newcommand{\prosesectiontitle}[1]{\poemtitle{#1}}
1861 \newcommand{\prosesectiontitlenotitle}[1]{\poemtitlenotitle{#1}}
```

Next, environments for prose sections. The environment resets (or doesn't, in the second case) the marginal line number. The default modulo line number is that prevailing in verse sections, but you can change it at will.

```
1862 \setcounter{prosemodulo}{\value{lineindexrepeat}}%
1863 \addtocounter{prosemodulo}{1}%
1864 \ifx\modulolinenumbers\undefined%
1865 \relax\else
1866 \modulolinenumbers[\value{prosemodulo}]% if lineno is called
1867 \fi
1868 \newenvironment{prosesection}
1869 {\resetlinenum\begin{linenumbers}%
1870 \renewcommand{\linenumfont}{\scriptsize}%
1871 \ifnumbersright\rightlinenumbers*\setlength{\linenumbersep}{-\marginparsep}%
1872 %\else\ifnumbersswitch\switchlinenumbers\setlength{\linenumbersep}{\marginparsep}%
1873 \else\ifnumbersswitch\rightlinenumbers*\setlength{\linenumbersep}{-\marginparsep}%
1874 \else\leftlinenumbers*\setlength{\linenumbersep}{\marginparsep}%
1875 \addtolength{\linenumbersep}{5pt}% seems about right
1876 \fi\fi
1877 \noemendyettrue%
1878 \noexplainyettrue%
1879 }
1880 {\end{linenumbers}}
1881 \newenvironment{prosesectionnoreset}
1882 {\begin{linenumbers}%
1883 \renewcommand{\linenumfont}{\scriptsize}
1884 \ifnumbersright\rightlinenumbers*\setlength{\linenumbersep}{-\marginparsep}%
1885 %\else\ifnumbersswitch\switchlinenumbers\setlength{\linenumbersep}{\marginparsep}%
```



```

1886 \else\ifnumbersswitch\rightlinenumbers*\setlength{\linenumbersep}{-\marginparsep}%
1887 \else\leftlinenumbers*\setlength{\linenumbersep}{\marginparsep}%
1888 \addtolength{\linenumbersep}{5pt}% seems about right
1889 \fi\fi
1890 % \noemendyettrue%
1891 % \noexplainyettrue%
1892 }\end{linenumbers}}

```

Set up commands for notes sections.

`\setproselemmastart` Finds the line number at the beginning of a lemma. Thanks to Robin Fairbairns and Heiko Oberdiek for `\ifrefundefined`. Fairbairns version

```

1893 % \newcommand*\ifrefundefined[1] {%
1894 % \expandafter\ifx\csname r@#1\endcsname\relax
1895 % }
1896 % Oberdiek version
1897 \makeatletter
1898 \newcommand*\ifrefundefined}[1]{%
1899 \expandafter\ifx\csname r@#1\endcsname\relax
1900 \expandafter\@firstoftwo
1901 \else
1902 \expandafter\@secondoftwo
1903 \fi
1904 }
1905 \newcommand*\@extract@ref}[2]{%
1906 \expandafter\expandafter\expandafter#1\csname
1907 r@#2\endcsname{}\}\@nil
1908 }
1909
1910 \newcommand*\@extractref}{%
1911 \@extract@ref\@car
1912 }
1913
1914 \newcommand*\@extractpageref}{%
1915 \@extract@ref\@secondcar
1916 }
1917
1918 \long\def\@secondcar#1#2#3\@nil{#2}
1919
1920 \newcommand*\setcounterfromref}[2]{%
1921 \ifrefundefined{#2}{%
1922 \protect\G@refundefinedtrue
1923 \@latex@warning{Reference '#2' on page \thepage \space
1924 undefined}%
1925 \setcounter{#1}{0}%
1926 }{%
1927 \setcounter{#1}{\@extractref{#2}}%
1928 }%
1929 }
1930 \newcommand*\setcounterfrompageref}[2]{%

```

```

1931 \ifrefundefined{#2}{%
1932   \protect\G@refundefinedtrue
1933   \@latex@warning{Reference '#2' on page \thepage \space
1934     undefined}%
1935   \setcounter{#1}{0}%
1936 }{%
1937   \setcounter{#1}{\@extractpageref{#2}}%
1938 }%
1939 }
1940 %
1941 \makeatother
1942 \newcommand{\setproselemmastart}[1]{%
1943 \unskip
1944 \setcounterfromref{proselinenum}{#1}}

```

`\setproselemmarange` Finds the end of a multi-line lemma.

```

1945 % \newcommand{\setproselemmarange}[2]{%
1946 % \setproselemmastart{#1}%
1947 % \setcounter{lemmalines}{#2}%
1948 % \ifthenelse{\equal{\value{lemmalines}}{0}}{\rangelemmafalse}{\rangelemmatrue}%
1949 % \setcounter{lemmaend}{\theproselinenum}%
1950 % \addtocounter{lemmaend}{\thelemmalines}\unskip%
1951 % }
1952 \newcommand{\setproselemmarange}[2]{%
1953 \setproselemmastart{#1}%
1954 \pmccheckifinteger{#2}%
1955 \ifinteger
1956 \setcounter{lemmalines}{#2}%
1957 \ifthenelse{\equal{\value{lemmalines}}{0}}{\rangelemmafalse}{\rangelemmatrue}%
1958 \setcounter{lemmaend}{\theproselinenum}%
1959 \addtocounter{lemmaend}{\thelemmalines}\unskip%
1960 \else
1961 % \ref{#2}
1962 \setcounterfromref{lemmaend}{#2}\rangelemmatrue
1963 \fi\unskip
1964 }

```

`\proseciterange` Sets the range note for in a multi-line lemma.

```

1965 \newcommand{\proseciterange}{%
1966 \ifrangelemma%
1967 \theproselinenum --\thelemmaend%
1968 \else%
1969 \theproselinenum%
1970 \fi}

```

`\checkprosenoteheaders` Updates running header for note sections. Typesets line number in notes.

```

1971 \newcommand{\checkprosenoteheaders}{\string\setcounter\string{notepageholdernote}\string}%
1972 \string{\thepage\string}\string\ifhmode\string\unskip\string\fi
1973 \string\ifthenelse\string{\string\value\string{notepageholdernote}\string}>

```

```

1974 \string\value\string{notepageholdertitle\string}\string}%
1975 \string{\string\mark\string{\string\thenotepageholdernote\string}\string}%
1976 \string{\string\mark\string{\string\thenotepageholdertitle\string}\string}\string\unskip
1977 \string\unskip\string\relax\ \proseciterange : \string~\string\nolinebreak}%

```

`\prosetextnote`

```

1978 \newcommand{\proselinelabel}[1]{\unskip\linelabel{#1}}
1979 \newcommand{\prosetextnote}[3][0]{%
1980 \iftextnoteson%
1981 \unskip\proselinelabel{#2}%
1982 \setproselemmarange{#2}{#1}%
1983 \immediate\write\textnotes{\checkprosenoteheaders}%
1984 \literaltextnote{#3}%
1985 \iftextnotessinglepar%
1986 \literaltextnote{\par}%
1987 \fi%
1988 \resetlemmacounters%
1989 \fi\unskip%
1990 }

```

`\proseemendation` Notice that it calls `\firstemendation` as usual.

```

1991 \newcommand{\proseemendation}[3][0]{%
1992 \ifemendationson%
1993 \unskip\proselinelabel{#2}%
1994 \setproselemmarange{#2}{#1}%
1995     \ifredundantemendations
1996         \iftextnoteson
1997     \ifrangelemma
1998         \prosetextnote[#1]{#2}{#3}%
1999     \else
2000         \prosetextnote{#2}{#3}%
2001     \fi % ifrangelemma}
2002     \fi % iftextnoteson
2003 \iftextnotessinglepar%
2004 \literaltextnote{\par}%
2005 \fi% iftextnotessinglepar
2006     \fi % ifredundantemendations
2007     \ifnoemendyet % firstemendation
2008         \firstemendation
2009         \fi%noemendyet
2010         \global\noemendyetfalse
2011 \immediate\write\emendations{\checkprosenoteheaders}%
2012     \literatemend{#3}%
2013 \ifemendationssinglepar%
2014 \literatemend{\par}%
2015 \fi% ifemendationssinglep
2016     \resetlemmacounters%
2017 \fi\unskip%
2018 }

```

`\proseexplanatory`

```
2019 \newcommand{\proseexplanatory}[3][0]{%
2020 \ifexplanon%
2021 \unskip\proselinelabel{#2}%
2022 \setproselemmarange{#2}{#1}%
2023   \ifnoexplainyet% firstexplanation
2024   \firstexplanatory%
2025   \fi%noexplainyet
2026   \global\noexplainyetfalse%
2027 \immediate\write\explanations{\checkprosenoteheaders}%
2028   \literalexplain{#3}%
2029 \ifexplanationssinglepar%
2030   \literalexplain{\par}%
2031   \fi% ifexplanationssinglepar
2032   \resetlemmacounters%
2033 \fi\unskip%
2034 }
```

`\proseaccidental`

```
2035 \newcommand{\proseaccidental}[2]{
2036 \iftextnoteson
2037 \ifincludeaccidentals
2038   \immediate\write\textnotes{\string\nobreak}%
2039 \prosetextnote{#1}{#2}%
2040 \immediate\write\textnotes{\string\nobreak}%
2041   \iftextnotessinglepar%
2042   \literaltextnote{\par}%
2043   \fi%
2044 \fi\fi
2045 }
2046 \newcommand{\prosetsvariant}[3][0]{\iftextnoteson
2047 \ifincludetypescripts
2048   \immediate\write
2049 \textnotes{\string\nobreak}%
2050 \prosetextnote[#1]{#2}{#3}%
2051 \immediate\write\textnotes{\string\nobreak}%
2052   \iftextnotessinglepar%
2053   \literaltextnote{\par}%
2054   \fi%
2055 \fi\fi
2056 }
2057 \newcommand{\prosetsaccidental}[2]{\iftextnoteson
2058 \ifincludetypescripts\proseaccidental{#1}{#2}\fi\fi}
```

## 20.20 Annotation by Sentence and Paragraph Number

Marking sentences. First, some `\ifs`, token lists, and counters.

```
2059 \newif{\ifprosebysentence}
2060 \newif{\ifrunningsentencenumbers}\runningsentencenumberstrue
```

```

2061 \newif{\ifmarginsentencenumbers}\marginsentencenumberstrue
2062
2063 \newtoks{\pmnoteheader}
2064
2065 \newcounter{pmsentencenumber}\setcounter{pmsentencenumber}{0}
2066 \newcounter{pmmodulo}\setcounter{pmmodulo}{3}
2067 \newcounter{pmindexcount}\setcounter{pmindexcount}{0}

```

A starter. Mostly a placeholder. For changes to a whole section.

```

2068 \newcommand{\setprosebysentence}{\prosebysentencetrue%
2069 }
2070 \newenvironment{pmsection}{
2071 \noemendyettrue%
2072 \noexplainyettrue%
2073 }{}

```

Formatting for sentence numbers in the running text and in the margin.

```

2074 \newcommand{\runningsentencenumberformat}[1]{\nobreak%
2075 \textsuperscript{\scriptsize{#1}}\unskip\nobreak}
2076 \newcommand{\marginsentencenumberformat}[1]{\scriptsize{#1}}
2077 \newcommand{\setpmmodulo}[1]{\setcounter{pmmodulo}{#1}%
2078 \addtocounter{pmmodulo}{-1}%
2079 }
2080 \newcommand{\pmnumberstoleft}{%\catcode'\@=11%
2081 \numbersswitchfalse\numbersrightfalse%
2082 \setlength{\marginparsep}{18pt}%
2083 }
2084 \newcommand{\pmnumberstoright}{%\catcode'\@=11%
2085 \numbersswitchfalse\numbersrighttrue%
2086 \setlength{\marginparsep}{-18pt}
2087 % \setlength{\marginparsep}{18pt}
2088 }
2089 \newcommand{\pmnumbersswitch}{\strictpagechecktrue\numbersswitchtrue\numbersrightfalse%
2090 \setlength{\marginparsep}{18pt}%
2091 }
2092 \newcommand{\pmnumbersgutter}{%\catcode'\@=11%
2093 \pmnumbersswitch%
2094 \pmclreversesideparfalse\numbersguttertrue%
2095 \setlength{\marginparsep}{18pt}%
2096 }
2097 \newcommand{\pmnumbersouter}{%\catcode'\@=11%
2098 \pmnumbersswitch%
2099 \pmclreversesidepartrue\numbersgutterfalse%
2100 \setlength{\marginparsep}{18pt}%
2101 }

```

Macros for actually writing the numbers in the margin.

```

2102 \newcommand{\putpmsentencenumber}{%
2103 \putpmmarginnumber{\thepmsentencenumber}%
2104 {\marginsentencenumberformat}}
2105 \newcommand{\putpmmarginnumber}[2]{%

```

```

2106 \nolinebreak\begin{marginenvironment}%
2107 \nolinebreak%
2108 \ifnumbersswitch%\marginpar{\hfil #2{#1}}
2109 \pmclsidepar{\hfil #2{#1}}%
2110 \else%
2111 \ifnumbersright%\marginpar{\hfil #2{#1}}
2112 \pmclrightsidepar{\hfil #2{#1}}%
2113 \else% \marginpar{#2{#1}\hfil}
2114 \pmclleftsidepar
2115 {#2{#1}\hfil}%
2116 \fi%
2117 \fi%
2118 \nolinebreak%
2119 \end{marginenvironment}\nolinebreak%
2120 }

```

`\pmsentence` Put this before every sentence. (This is the opposite of the convention in verse sections, where `\verseline` is at the end of each line.

```

2121 \newcommand{\pmsentence}{%
2122 % increment sentence number at beginning of sentence
2123 \addtocounter{pmsentencenumber}{1}%
2124 \ifrunningsentencenumber% add running number
2125 \runningsentencenumberformat{\thepmsentencenumber}%
2126 \fi%
2127 \ifmarginsentencenumber% add marginal number
2128 \addtocounter{pmindexcount}{1}%
2129 \leavevmode%
2130 \ifthenelse{\value{pmindexcount}>\value{pmmodulo}}%
2131 { \putpmsentencenumber\nobreak%
2132 \setcounter{pmindexcount}{0}%
2133 }{\relax}%
2134 \fi%
2135 % create header for notes if any are to occur
2136 \ifmparas%
2137 \global\edef\noteheaderconcat{\themparagraph:\thepmsentencenumber}%
2138 \pmnoteheader=\expandafter{\noteheaderconcat}%
2139 \else%
2140 \global\edef\noteheaderconcat{\thepmsentencenumber:}%
2141 \global\edef\noteheaderconcat{\thepmsentencenumber}
2142 \pmnoteheader=\expandafter{\noteheaderconcat}%
2143 \fi%
2144 }

```

`\pmsentencetwo` Kludge for the second sentence in a line.

```

2145 \newcommand{\pmsentencetwo}{%
2146 % increment sentence number at beginning of sentence
2147 \addtocounter{pmsentencenumber}{1}%
2148 \ifrunningsentencenumber% add running number
2149 \runningsentencenumberformat{\thepmsentencenumber}%
2150 \fi%

```

```

2151 \ifmarginsentencenumber% add marginal number
2152 \addtocounter{pindexcount}{1}%
2153 \leavevmode%
2154 \ifthenelse{\value{pindexcount}>\value{pmodulo}}%
2155 { \putpmsentencenumbertwo\nobreak%
2156 \setcounter{pindexcount}{0}%
2157 }{\relax}%
2158 % \ifnum\thepindexcount>\thepmodulo%
2159 % \putpmsentencenumbertwo\nobreak%
2160 % \setcounter{pindexcount}{0}%
2161 % \fi%
2162 \fi%
2163 % create header for notes if any are to occur
2164 \ifmparas%
2165 \global\edef\noteheaderconcat{\thepparagraph:\thepmsentencenumber}%
2166 \pnoteheader=\expandafter\noteheaderconcat}%
2167 \else%
2168 \global\edef\noteheaderconcat{\thepmsentencenumber}%
2169 \pnoteheader=\expandafter\noteheaderconcat}%
2170 \fi%
2171 }
2172
2173 \newcommand{\putpmsentencenumbertwo}{%
2174 \putpmmarginnumber{\rlap{\phantom{1}},~\thepmsentencenumber}}%
2175 {\marginsentencenumberformat}}

```

`\pmsentencethree` Kludge for the third sentence in a line.

```

2176 \newcommand{\pmsentencethree}{%
2177 % increment sentence number at beginning of sentence
2178 \addtocounter{pmsentencenumber}{1}%
2179 \ifrunningsentencenumber% add running number
2180 \runningsentencenumberformat{\thepmsentencenumber}%
2181 \fi%
2182 \ifmarginsentencenumber% add marginal number
2183 \addtocounter{pindexcount}{1}%
2184 \leavevmode%
2185 \ifthenelse{\value{pindexcount}>\value{pmodulo}}%
2186 { \putpmsentencenumberthree\nobreak%
2187 \setcounter{pindexcount}{0}%
2188 }{\relax}%
2189 % \ifnum\thepindexcount>\thepmodulo%
2190 % \putpmsentencenumberthree\nobreak%
2191 % \setcounter{pindexcount}{0}%
2192 % \fi%
2193 \fi%
2194 % create header for notes if any are to occur
2195 \ifmparas%
2196 \global\edef\noteheaderconcat{\thepparagraph:\thepmsentencenumber}%
2197 \pnoteheader=\expandafter\noteheaderconcat}%
2198 \else%

```

```

2199 \global\edef\noteheaderconcat{\thepmsentencenumber}%
2200 \pmnoteheader=\expandafter{\noteheaderconcat}%
2201 \fi%
2202 }
2203
2204 \newcommand{\putpmsentencenumberthree}{%
2205 \putpmmarginnumber{\rlap{\phantom{1,~2},~\thepmsentencenumber}}%
2206 {\marginsentencenumberformat}}

```

\pmsentencefour

```

2207 \newcommand{\pmsentencefour}{%
2208 % increment sentence number at beginning of sentence
2209 \addtocounter{pmsentencenumber}{1}%
2210 \ifrunningsentencenumber% add running number
2211 \runningsentencenumberformat{\thepmsentencenumber}%
2212 \fi%
2213 \ifmarginsentencenumber% add marginal number
2214 \addtocounter{pmindexcount}{1}%
2215 \leavevmode%
2216 \ifthenelse{\value{pmindexcount}>\value{pmmodulo}}%
2217 { \putpmsentencenumberfour\nobreak%
2218 \setcounter{pmindexcount}{0}%
2219 }\relax}%
2220 \fi%
2221 % create header for notes if any are to occur
2222 \ifmparas%
2223 \global\edef\noteheaderconcat{\thepmparagraph:\thepmsentencenumber}%
2224 \pmnoteheader=\expandafter{\noteheaderconcat}%
2225 \else%
2226 \global\edef\noteheaderconcat{\thepmsentencenumber}%
2227 \pmnoteheader=\expandafter{\noteheaderconcat}%
2228 \fi%
2229 }
2230
2231 \newcommand{\putpmsentencenumberfour}{%
2232 \putpmmarginnumber{\rlap{\phantom{1,~2,~3},~\thepmsentencenumber}}%
2233 {\marginsentencenumberformat}}
2234

```

Macros for numbering paragraphs

```

2235 \newcounter{pmparagraph}
2236 \setcounter{pmparagraph}{0}
2237 \newif{\ifmparas}\mparasfalse
2238 \newif{\ifmparainmar}\mparainmartrue
2239 \newif{\ifmpararunning}\mpararunningfalse
2240 \newif{\ifpmsentencebypara}% reset sentence counter every paragraph
2241 \pmsentencebyparatrue

```

Formatting marginal and running paragraph numbers, printing them.

```

2242 \newcommand{\pmparmarformat}[1]{\textbf{\small #1}}

```



```

2243 \newcommand{\pmpararunningformat}[1]{\textbf{\small #1}}
2244 \newcommand{\putpmmarparanumber}{%
2245 \putpmmarginnumber{\llap{\themparagraph~}}{\pmparmarformat}}

```

`\pmpara` Mark the beginning of each paragraph with `\pmpara`

```

2246 \newcommand{\pmpara}{\leavevmode%
2247 \pmparastrue\addtocounter{pmparagraph}{1}%
2248 \ifpmparainmar% put in marginal paragraph number
2249 \putpmmarparanumber
2250 \fi
2251 \ifpmpararunning% put in running number
2252 \pmpararunningformat{\themparagraph}%
2253 \fi
2254 \ifpmsentencebypara% reset sentence counter
2255 \setcounter{pmsentencecount}{0}%
2256 \setcounter{pmindecount}{0}%
2257 \fi}

```

`\sentencelabel` Makes a label either by sentence number or by paragraph and sentence number, for use by `\ref` and by the various notes commands.

```

2258 \makeatletter
2259 \def\sentencelabel#1{\@bsphack%
2260 \ifmparas%
2261 \protected@write\@auxout{}%
2262 {\string\newlabel{#1}{\themparagraph : \thepmsentencecount}{\thepage}}}%
2263 \else%
2264 \protected@write\@auxout{}%
2265 {\string\newlabel{#1}{\thepmsentencecount}{\thepage}}}%
2266 \fi%
2267 \@esphack%
2268 }
2269 \makeatother

```

Macros to set up endnote commands for paragraph and sentence annotation.

```

2270 \newtoks{\pmprangeend} % for notes that refer to ranges
2271 % setting the range for the lemma:
2272 \newcommand{\setpmlanmarange}[1]{%
2273 \pmpcheckifinteger{#1}%
2274 \ifinteger%
2275 \setcounter{lemmalines}{#1}%
2276 \ifthenelse{\equal{\value{lemmalines}}{0}}{\rangelemmafalse}{\rangelemmatrue}%
2277 \setcounter{lemmaend}{\thepmsentencecount}%
2278 \addtocounter{lemmaend}{\thelemmalines}%
2279 \pmprangeend={\thelemmaend}%
2280 \else%
2281 \pmprangeend={\ref{#1}}\rangelemmatrue%
2282 \fi%
2283 }
2284 % Setting the string to include ranges in notes:

```

```

2285 \newcommand{\pmciterange}{%
2286 \ifrangelemma{\the\pmnoteheader --\the\pmrangeend:}%
2287 \else%
2288 \the\pmnoteheader:%
2289 \fi}
2290 % For running headers
2291 \newcommand{\pmchecknoteheaders}{\string\setcounter\string{notepageholdernote\string}%
2292 \string{\thepage\string}\string\ifhmode\string\unskip\string\fi
2293 \string\ifthenelse\string{\string\value\string{notepageholdernote\string}>
2294 \string\value\string{notepageholdertitle\string}\string}%
2295 \string{\string\mark\string{\string\thenotepageholdernote\string}\string}%
2296 \string{\string\mark\string{\string\thenotepageholdertitle\string}\string}\string\unskip}
2297 % to reset lemma counters at end of note
2298 \newcommand{\pmresetlemmacounters}{\rangelemmafalse%
2299 \setcounter{lemmalines}{0}%
2300 \setcounter{lemmaend}{0}%
2301 \pmrangeend={\relax}%
2302 }

```

#### \pmtextrnote

```

2303 \newcommand{\pmtextrnote}[2][0]{%
2304 \iftextnoteson%
2305 \setpmllemmarange{#1}%
2306 \immediate\write\textnotes{\pmchecknoteheaders\string~}%
2307 \immediate\write\textnotes{\pmciterange}%
2308 \literaltextnote{#2}%
2309 \iftextnotessinglepar%
2310 \literaltextnote{\par}%
2311 \fi%
2312 \fi%
2313 \pmresetlemmacounters%
2314 \unskip}

```

#### \pmexplanatory

```

2315 \newcommand{\pmexplanatory}[2][0]{%
2316 \ifexplanon%
2317 \setpmllemmarange{#1}%
2318 \ifnoexplainyet % first explanation
2319 \firstexplanatory%
2320 \fi %noexplainyet
2321 \global\noexplainyetfalse%
2322 \immediate\write\explanations{\pmchecknoteheaders\string~}%
2323 \immediate\write\explanations{\pmciterange}%
2324 \literalexplain{#2}%
2325 \ifexplanationssinglepar%
2326 \literalexplain{\par}%
2327 \fi %ifexplanationssinglepar
2328 \fi % ifexplanon
2329 \pmresetlemmacounters%
2330 \unskip%

```

2331 }

\pmemendation

```
2332 \newcommand{\pmemendation}[2][0]{%
2333 \ifemendationson%
2334   \setpmlenmarange{#1}%
2335   \ifredundantemendations%
2336     \iftextnoteson%
2337 \ifrangelemma%
2338   \pmtextnote{#1}{#2}%
2339 \else%
2340   \pmtextnote{#2}%
2341 \fi % ifrangelemma}
2342   \fi %iftextnoteson
2343   \fi % ifredundantemendations
2344   \ifnoemendyet % firstemendation
2345   \firstemendation%
2346   \fi %noemendyet
2347   \global\noemendyetfalse%
2348 \immediate\write\emendations{\pmchecknoteheaders\string~}%
2349 \immediate\write\emendations{\pmciterange}%
2350   \literalemend{#2}%
2351 \ifemendationssinglepar%
2352   \literalemend{\par}%
2353   \fi% ifemendationssinglepar
2354   \fi % ifemendationson
2355 \pmresetlemmacounters%
2356 }
```

\pmaccidental

```
2357 \newcommand{\pmaccidental}[1]{%
2358 \iftextnoteson%
2359 \ifincludeaccidentals%
2360   \immediate\write\textnotes{\string\nobreak}%
2361 \pmtextnote{#1}%
2362 \immediate\write\textnotes{\string\nobreak}%
2363   \iftextnotessinglepar%
2364   \literaltextnote{\par}%
2365   \fi%
2366 \fi\fi%
2367 }
```

\pmtsvariant

```
2368 \newcommand{\pmtsvariant}[2][0]{\iftextnoteson%
2369 \ifincludetypescripts%
2370   \immediate\write\textnotes{\string\nobreak}%
2371 \pmtextnote{#1}{#2}%
2372 \immediate\write\textnotes{\string\nobreak}%
2373   \iftextnotessinglepar%
```

```

2374 \literaltextnote{\par}%
2375 \fi%
2376 \fi\fi%
2377 }
2378 \newcommand{\pmtsaccidental}[1]{\iftextnoteson\ifincludetypescripts\pmaccidental{#1}\fi\fi}

```

## 20.21 Using Footnotes

`\textnotesatfoot` has to redefine `\sources` and a few others as well.

```
\textnotesatfoot
```

```

2379 \newcommand{\textnotesatfoot}{% first redefine textnotes
2380 \global\textnotesontrue%
2381 \global\textnotesatendfalse%
2382 \ifsourcesfootnotespara%
2383 \DeclareNewFootnote[para]{A}%
2384 \else%
2385 \DeclareNewFootnote[plain]{A}%
2386 \fi%
2387 \iftextfootnotespara%
2388 \DeclareNewFootnote[para]{B}%
2389 \else%
2390 \DeclareNewFootnote[plain]{B}%
2391 \fi%
2392 \renewcommand{\textnote}[2][0]{\setlemmarange{##1}%
2393 \FootnotetextB{\relax}{\citerange:~##2}%
2394 \resetlemmacounters}%
2395 % then redefine sources
2396 \renewcommand{\sources}[1]{\FootnotetextA{\relax}{##1}}%
2397 % then prose textnote
2398 \renewcommand{\prosetextnote}[3][0]{%
2399 \unskip\proselinelabel{##2}%
2400 \setproselemmarange{##2}{##1}%
2401 \FootnotetextB{\relax}{\proseciterange:~##3}\resetlemmacounters}%
2402 % then pmtextnote
2403 \renewcommand{\pmtextnote}[2][0]{\setpmllemmarange{##1}%
2404 \FootnotetextB{\relax}{\pmciterange~##2}\pmresetlemmacounters}
2405 }

```

```
\emendationsatfoot
```

```

2406 \newcommand{\emendationsatfoot}{%
2407 \global\emendationsontrue%
2408 \global\emendationsatendfalse%
2409 \ifemendationfootnotespara%
2410 \DeclareNewFootnote[para]{C}%
2411 \else%
2412 \DeclareNewFootnote[plain]{C}%
2413 \fi%
2414 \renewcommand{\emendation}[2][0]{\setlemmarange{##1}%

```

```

2415 \FootnotetextC{\relax}{\citerange:~##2}%
2416 \resetlemmacounters}%
2417 \renewcommand{\proseemendation}[3][0]{\unskip\proselinelabel{##2}%
2418 \setproselemmrange{##2}{##1}%
2419 \FootnotetextC{\relax}{\proseciterange:~##3}\resetlemmacounters}%
2420 \renewcommand{\pmemendation}[2][0]{\setpmllemmrange{##1}%
2421 \FootnotetextC{\relax}{\pmciterange~##2}\pmresetlemmacounters}
2422 }

```

`\explanationsatfoot`

```

2423 \newcommand{\explanationsatfoot}{%
2424 \global\explanontrue%
2425 \global\explanatendfalse%
2426 \ifexplanfootnotespara%
2427 \DeclareNewFootnote[para]{D}%
2428 \else%
2429 \DeclareNewFootnote[plain]{D}%
2430 \fi%
2431 \renewcommand{\explanatory}[2][0]{\setlemmrange{##1}%
2432 \FootnotetextD{\relax}{\citerange:~##2}%
2433 \resetlemmacounters}%
2434 \renewcommand{\prosexplanatory}[3][0]{\unskip\proselinelabel{##2}%
2435 \setproselemmrange{##2}{##1}%
2436 \FootnotetextD{\relax}{\proseciterange:~##3}}
2437 \renewcommand{\pmexplanatory}[2][0]{\setpmllemmrange{##1}%
2438 \FootnotetextD{\relax}{\pmciterange~##2}\pmresetlemmacounters}%
2439 }

```

`\bibleverse`

```

2440 \newcommand{\bibleverse}{\pmsentence}
2441 \newcommand{\biblechapter}{\pmpara}

```

## 20.22 Embarrassing kludges

Because the dirty trick mentioned above writes out textnotes as a ribbon one word wide, quoted poetry in the notes sections will leave a blank line at the end, which will be interpreted as a paragraph break when the file is read back in by  $\text{\LaTeX}$ . These kludges correct that problem.

```

2442 \newcommand{\quotedversecorrectiontextnote}[1][Opt]
2443 {\iftextnoteson%
2444 \immediate\write\textnotes{\string\noindent\string\kern-#1}%
2445 \fi}
2446 \newcommand{\quotedversecorrectionemendation}[1][Opt]
2447 {\ifemendationson%
2448 \immediate\write\emendations{\string\noindent\string\kern-#1}%
2449 \fi}
2450 \newcommand{\quotedversecorrectionexplanatory}[1][Opt]
2451 {\ifexplanon%
2452 \immediate\write\explanations{\string\noindent\string\kern-#1}%

```

```
2453 \fi}
```

## 20.23 Marking stanza breaks on page turns

Use the macro below to change the symbol used to mark cases in which there is or is not a stanza break at a page turn.

```
2454 \newcommand{\stanzaatbottom}[1]{\global\edef\stanzaatbottomvalue{#1}}
2455 \stanzaatbottom{*}
2456 \newcommand{\nostanzaatbottom}[1]{\global\edef\nostanzaatbottomvalue{#1}}
2457 \nostanzaatbottom{\relax}
```

## 20.24 Parallel Texts

First, two utility macros from the memoir class:

`\cleartorecto` A repeat of `\cleardoublepage`; clears to a recto (odd-numbered) page.

```
2458 \def\cleartorecto{\clearpage\if@twoside \ifodd\c@page\else
2459 \hbox{}\thispagestyle{empty}}%
2460 \newpage\if@twocolumn\hbox{}\newpage\fi\fi\fi}
2461
```

`\cleartoverso` Clears to a verso (even-numbered) page.

```
2462 \def\cleartoverso{\clearpage\if@twoside
2463 \ifodd\c@page\hbox{}\thispagestyle{empty}}%
2464 \newpage\if@twocolumn\hbox{}\newpage\fi\fi\fi}
2465
```

Macros for forcing the marginal line numbers to the left side or the right side. These marginal line numbers, unlike those made with `\marginpar`, do not float. This code is modelled after code from the memoir class, by Peter Wilson.

`\pmcleftsidepar` As in the memoir class, these sidepars do not float.

```
2466 \newdimen\pmclsavsk
2467 \newcount\pmclsavsf
2468 \def\pmclsphack{%
2469 \relax
2470 \ifhmode
2471 \pmclsavsk\lastskip
2472 \pmclsavsf\spacefactor
2473 \fi}
2474 \def\pmclesphack{%
2475 \relax
2476 \ifhmode
2477 \spacefactor\pmclsavsf
2478 \ifdim\pmclsavsk>0pt
2479 \ignorespaces
2480 \fi
2481 \fi}
2482 % \newcommand{\pmcleftsidepar}[1]{%
```

```

2483 % \pmclbsphack\leavevmode\vadjust{%
2484 %     \rlap{\kern-\parindent%
2485 %     \kern -\marginparsep \kern -\marginparwidth % at left
2486 %     \vbox to Opt{%
2487 %     \kern \pmclsideparvshift%           % vertical shift to align top text lines
2488 %     \begin{minipage}{\marginparwidth}%
2489 % #1%
2490 %     \end{minipage}%
2491 %     \vss}}\pmclesphack%
2492 % } % version 2.44
2493 \newcommand{\pmclleftsidepar}[1]{%
2494 \pmclbsphack\strut\vadjust{% changed
2495 \rlap{\kern-\parindent%
2496 \kern -\marginparsep \kern -\marginparwidth% at left
2497 %     \vbox to Opt{%
2498 %     \kern \pmclsideparvshift%           % vertical shift to align top text lines
2499 %     \begin{minipage}{\marginparwidth}%
2500 \setbox0=\vtop to Opt{% added
2501 \begin{minipage}[t]{\marginparwidth}% added
2502 #1%
2503 \end{minipage}%
2504 %     \vss}}\pmclesphack%
2505 \vss}% changed
2506 \vtop to Opt{\kern\pmclsideparvshift % default should be Opt
2507 \kern-\dp\strutbox \kern-\ht0 \box0 \vss}}\pmclesphack}% changed
2508
2509 \newcommand{\pmclrightsidepar}[1]{%
2510 % \pmclbsphack\leavevmode\vadjust{%
2511 \pmclbsphack\strut\vadjust{%
2512 \rlap{\kern-\parindent%
2513 %     \kern \textwidth \kern -\marginparsep           % at right
2514 \kern\textwidth\kern\marginparsep% at right
2515 %     \vbox to Opt{%
2516 %     \kern \pmclsideparvshift%           % vertical shift to align top text lines
2517 %     \begin{minipage}{\marginparwidth}%
2518 \setbox0=\vtop to Opt{% added
2519 \begin{minipage}[t]{\marginparwidth}% added
2520 #1%
2521 \end{minipage}%
2522 %     \vss}}\pmclesphack%
2523 \vss}% changed
2524 \vtop to Opt{\kern\pmclsideparvshift% default should be Opt
2525 \kern-\dp\strutbox \kern-\ht0 \box0 \vss}}\pmclesphack}% changed
2526

Booleans for parallel texts
2527 \newif\ifparalleltxts
2528 \paralleltxtsfalse
2529 \newif\ifrecto
2530 \rectofalse

```

2531 `\newif\ifverso`  
2532 `\versofalse`

Booleans are needed to describe situations in which poems and stanzas are left open at the page break. `\finishrectopage` and `\finishversopage` will close poems and stanzas (so as not to generate errors because of environments left open), although as far as the poem is concerned the stanza or poem may still be open. (I will say that the stanza or poem in such a case is “artificially closed.”) There are two of them for each case of artificial closure. The first boolean (for each stanza or poem artificially closed) must reflect whether the stanza or poem has been (artificially) closed, to reopen on the next page of the same kind (recto or verso). If a poem or stanza has been (artificially) closed, the `\mark` will not be changed (so that it will still reflect whether the reader should understand there to be a stanza break at the bottom of the page or not). The second boolean for each case of artificial closure reflects whether the `\mark` has been changed or not.

2533 `\newif\ifrectopoempending`  
2534 `\rectopoempendingfalse`  
2535 `\newif\ifversopoempending`  
2536 `\versopoempendingfalse`  
2537 `\newif\ifrectostanzapending`  
2538 `\rectostanzapendingfalse`  
2539 `\newif\ifversostanzapending`  
2540 `\versostanzapendingfalse`  
2541 `\newif\ifrectostanzastillopen`  
2542 `\rectostanzastillopenfalse`  
2543 `\newif\ifversostanzastillopen`  
2544 `\versostanzastillopenfalse`  
2545 `\newif\ifrectopoemstilopen`  
2546 `\rectopoemstilopenfalse`  
2547 `\newif\ifversopoemstilopen`  
2548 `\versopoemstilopenfalse`

A further set of booleans is required for emendations and explanatory notes. Again the idea is that if a poem is artificially closed, but has already had its first emendation or explanatory note written to the external notes files, `poemscol` will remember that the next emendation or explanatory note it sees is not the first one for that poem and thus won't set the heading information for that poem in the notes section all over again.

2549 `\newif\ifrectoemendationspending`  
2550 `\rectoemendationspendingfalse`  
2551 `\newif\ifversoemendationspending`  
2552 `\versoemendationspendingfalse`  
2553 `\newif\ifrectoexplanationspending`  
2554 `\rectoexplanationspendingfalse`  
2555 `\newif\ifversoexplanationspending`  
2556 `\versoexplanationspendingfalse`

Counters for parallel texts: New counters are needed, not only for the recto and verso lines, but also for the scratch value which determines whether or not it is



time to output a marginal line number. These are saved at the end of every page, and restored at the beginning of every page of the same kind.

```
2557 \newcounter{rectolinecounter}
2558 \setcounter{rectolinecounter}{1}
2559 \newcounter{rectoindexscratch}
2560 \setcounter{rectoindexscratch}{1}
2561 \newcounter{versolinecounter}
2562 \setcounter{versolinecounter}{1}
2563 \newcounter{versoindexscratch}
2564 \setcounter{versoindexscratch}{1}
```

`\startparalleltxts` Clears to a verso (even-numbered) page, fixes where to put line numbers, modifies poem and stanza environments, changes where marginal line numbers are set, sets the booleans.

```
2565 \newcommand{\startparalleltxts}{%
2566 \leavevmode
2567 \cleartoverso
2568 \paralleltextstrue
2569 \renewenvironment{poem}{\raggedright
2570     \language=255%no hyphenation in verse
2571     \noemendyettrue
2572     \noexplainyettrue
2573     \setcounter{verselinenumber}{0}\setcounter{printlineindex}{0}
2574     \nobreak\begin{pmclverse}
2575     \inpoemtrue\nobreak\mark{\relax}}
2576     % must end poem if parallel text. Don't worry,
2577     % begin recto page and begin verso page will
2578     % reopen the poem and reset the line counter to the right value
2579     % if it was finish recto page or finish verso page
2580     % that closed the poem rather than your own declaration.
2581 {\ifversopoemstillopen
2582     \end{pmclverse}
2583 \inpoemfalse\mark{\relax}
2584     \else
2585     \ifrectopoemstillopen
2586     \end{pmclverse}
2587     \inpoemfalse\mark{\relax}
2588     \else
2589     \end{pmclverse}
2590     \inpoemfalse\mark{\relax}
2591     \goodbreak\afterpoemskip%\bigskip
2592 \fi\fi    }
2593 \renewenvironment{stanza}{\penalty-100\instanzatrue\mark{\nostanzaatbottomvalue\ }}
2594 % must end stanza if parallel text. Don't worry,
2595 % begin recto page and begin verso page will
2596 % reopen the stanza and reset the line counter to the right value
2597 % if it was finish recto page or finish verso page
2598 % that closed the stanza rather than your own declaration.
2599 {\ifversostanzastillopen
```

```

2600     \relax
2601     \else
2602         \ifrectostanzastillopen
2603     \relax
2604     \else
2605 \nobreak\mark{\stanzaatbottomvalue\ }\nobreak
2606 \ifspeciallinelock%
2607 \relax\else%
2608 \nolinebreak\incrementverselinenumber%
2609 \fi%
2610 \speciallinelockfalse%
2611 \nobreak
2612 \instanzafalse
2613
2614 \stanzaskip
2615 \fi\fi
2616 }
2617 \renewcommand{\putverselinenumber}{\nolinebreak\begin{marginenvironment}}%
2618 \nolinebreak
2619 % \marn{\hfil\textrm{\theverselinenumber}}
2620 % \marginpar{\hfil\textrm{\scriptsize\theverselinenumber}}
2621 \pmlleftsidepar{\textrm{\scriptsize\theverselinenumber}}}%
2622 \nolinebreak
2623 \end{marginenvironment}}%
2624 \nolinebreak
2625 }
2626 }

```

`\saveversoline` Macros for saving and restoring line numbers:

```

2627 \newcommand{\saveversoline}{\setcounter{versolinecounter}}%
2628 {\value{verselinenumber}}%
2629 \setcounter{versoindexscratch}{\value{printlineindex}}

```

`\restoreversoline`

```

2630 \newcommand{\restoreversoline}{\setcounter{verselinenumber}}%
2631 {\value{versolinecounter}}%
2632 \setcounter{printlineindex}{\value{versoindexscratch}}

```

`\saverectoline`

```

2633 \newcommand{\saverectoline}{\setcounter{rectolinecounter}}%
2634 {\value{verselinenumber}}%
2635 \setcounter{rectoindexscratch}{\value{printlineindex}}

```

`\restorerectoline`

```

2636 \newcommand{\restorerectoline}{\setcounter{verselinenumber}}%
2637 {\value{rectolinecounter}}%
2638 \setcounter{printlineindex}{\value{rectoindexscratch}}

```

Macros for line cross references:

You will probably want to use line cross references to show which lines on the recto page correspond to which lines on the verso page. When you do this, you will set, in the margin of a line on the recto page, the line number of the corresponding line on the verso side, in square brackets. You may mark that line number with a distinctive identifier. `\synchroflag` is a token register to hold that identifier, and `\setsynchroflag` is a command to put the identifier in the register. For instance, if you are setting the 1805 version of Wordsworth's *The Prelude* on the verso, and the 1850 version on the recto, you might wish to set the "synchroflag" to "1805" so that the line cross reference will look something like "[1805: 147]".

`\setsynchroflag`

```
2639 \newtoks{\synchroflag}
2640 \newcommand{\setsynchroflag}[1]{\synchroflag={#1}}
2641 \setsynchroflag{\relax}
```

Here are commands for defining and calling "synchrolabels", line cross references that tie verso and recto pages:

`\synchrolabel`

```
2642 \newcommand{\synchrolabel}[1]{\poemlinelabel{#1}}
2643 \newcommand{\hfilll}{\hskip 0pt plus 1 filll}
2644 \newcommand{\synchroref}[1]{%
2645 \pmcrlightsidepar{\textrm{\scriptsize[\the\synchroflag\ref{#1}]}}}%
2646 % \hfill\rlap{\textrm{\scriptsize[\the\synchroflag\ref{#1}]}}
2647 % \ifnum\theprintlineindex=\thelineindexrepeat
2648 % \hspace{-7pt}
2649 % \fi
2650 }
```

Finally, the `\startversopage`, `\finishversopage`, `\startrectopage` and `\finishrectopage` macros:

`\startversopage`

```
2651 \newcommand{\startversopage}{
2652 \ifrectostanzastillopen
2653 \end{stanza}
2654 \rectostanzastillopenfalse
2655 \end{poem}
2656 \rectopoemstilopenfalse
2657 \fi
2658 \ifrectopoemstilopen % from previous page
2659 \end{poem}
2660 \rectopoemstilopenfalse
2661 \fi
2662 \ifversopoempending % from previous verso
2663 \begin{poem}
2664 \global\versopoempendingfalse
2665 \fi
2666 \ifversostanzapending % from previous verso
2667 \begin{stanza}
```

```

2668 \global\versostanzapendingfalse
2669 \fi
2670 \ifversoemendationspending
2671 \noemendyetfalse
2672 \global\versoemendationspendingfalse
2673 \fi
2674 \ifversoexplanationspending
2675 \noexplainyetfalse
2676 \global\versoexplanationspendingfalse
2677 \fi
2678 \versotrue\restoreversoline}

```

\finishversopage

```

2679 \newcommand{\finishversopage}{
2680 \saveversoline\versofalse\
2681 \ifinpoem
2682 \global\versopoempendingtrue
2683 \versopoemstillopentrue
2684 \fi
2685 \ifinstanza
2686 \global\versostanzapendingtrue
2687 \versostanzastillopentrue
2688 \global\versopoempendingtrue
2689 \versopoemstillopentrue
2690 \fi
2691 \ifnoemendyet
2692 \relax
2693 \else
2694 \global\versoemendationspendingtrue
2695 \noemendyetfalse
2696 \fi
2697 \ifnoexplainyet
2698 \relax
2699 \else
2700 \global\versoexplanationspendingtrue
2701 \noexplainyetfalse
2702 \fi
2703 % \clearpage % keep in comment until footnotes problems are worked out
2704 }

```

\startrectopage

```

2705 \newcommand{\startrectopage}{
2706 \ifversostanzastillopen
2707 \end{stanza}
2708 \versostanzastillopenfalse
2709 \end{poem}
2710 \versopoemstillopenfalse
2711 \fi
2712 \ifversopoemstillopen
2713 \end{poem}

```

```

2714 \versopoemstillopenfalse
2715 \fi
2716 \ifrectopoempending
2717 \begin{poem}
2718 \global\rectopoempendingfalse
2719 \fi
2720 \ifrectostanzapending
2721 \begin{stanza}
2722 \global\rectostanzapendingfalse
2723 \fi
2724 \ifrectoemendationspending
2725 \noemendyetfalse
2726 \global\rectoemendationspendingfalse
2727 \fi
2728 \ifrectoexplanationspending
2729 \noexplainyetfalse
2730 \global\rectoexplanationspendingfalse
2731 \fi
2732 \rectottrue\restorerectoline}

```

\finishrectopage

```

2733 \newcommand{\finishrectopage}{\saverectoline\rectofalse
2734 \ifinpoem
2735 \global\rectopoempendingtrue
2736 \rectopoemstillopentrue
2737 \fi
2738 \ifinstanza
2739 \global\rectostanzapendingtrue
2740 \rectostanzastillopentrue
2741 \global\rectopoempendingtrue
2742 \rectopoemstillopentrue
2743 \fi
2744 \ifnoemendyet
2745 \relax
2746 \else
2747 \global\rectoemendationspendingtrue
2748 \noemendyetfalse
2749 \fi
2750 \ifnoexplainyet
2751 \relax
2752 \else
2753 \global\versoexplanationspendingtrue
2754 \noexplainyetfalse
2755 \fi
2756 % \clearpage % until footnote problem is solved
2757 }

```

## 20.25 Finishing up

`\finish` The `\finish` macro reads in the notes, the index (previously created from your .aux file by MakeIndex), and the contents sections and sets them. The notes sections send page information to the contents file as they are set. Then the page information for the index is sent to the contents file. Finally the contents file is closed and read in. If you have an editor's introduction or a list of abbreviations, copy this macro, uncomment out the commented out lines, and issue it all as a `\renewcommand` for `\finish`. Be sure to have the command `\label{editorsintroduction}` on the first page of your introduction.

It usually takes three passes to get the table of contents and the index files correct.

The consequence of doing using `\finish` is that the table of contents comes last. There are ways around this that are described earlier. The notes sections are all typeset in the `\small` size.

```
2758 \newcommand{\finish}{
2759 \small\bf \hyphenchar\font=45
2760 \small\it \hyphenchar\font=45
2761 \small\rm \hyphenchar\font=45
2762
2763 \ifemendationson
2764   \newpage
2765   \immediate\closeout\emendations
2766   \input \jobname.emd
2767 \fi
2768 \iftextnoteson
2769   \newpage
2770   \immediate\closeout\textnotes
2771   \input \jobname.ent
2772   \newpage
2773 \fi
2774 \ifexplanon
2775   \immediate\closeout\explanations
2776   \input \jobname.enx
2777   \newpage
2778 \fi
2779 \ifindexingon
2780 \printindex
2781 \fi
2782 \ifpoemcontentson
2783 %   \immediate\write\poemcontents{\string\vspace{10pt}\string\par}
2784 %   \immediate\write
2785 % \poemcontents{\string\contentspoemtitlefont\ Introduction to the Notes}
2786 %   \immediate\write
2787 % \poemcontents{\string~ / \string~ \string\pageref{editorsintroduction} \string\par}
2788 %   \immediate\write\poemcontents{\string\par \string\smallskip}
2789 %   \immediate\write\poemcontents{\string\contentspoemtitlefont\ Abbreviations}
2790 %   \immediate\write
2791 % \poemcontents{\string~ / \string~ \string\pageref{abbreviations} \string\par}
```

```

2792 %      \immediate\write\poemcontents{\string\par \string\smallskip}
2793      \ifemendationson
2794      \immediate\write\poemcontents{\string\contentspoemtitlefont\
2795      \the\emendationscontentsname}
2796      \immediate\write
2797 \poemcontents{\string~ / \string~\ \string\pageref{emendationnotes} \string\par}
2798      \immediate\write\poemcontents{\string\par \string\smallskip}
2799      \fi
2800      \iftextnoteson
2801      \immediate\write\poemcontents{\string\contentspoemtitlefont\
2802      \the\textnotescontentsname}
2803      \immediate\write
2804 \poemcontents{\string~ / \string~\ \string\pageref{textualnotes} \string\par}
2805      \immediate\write\poemcontents{\string\par \string\smallskip}
2806      \fi
2807      \ifexplanon
2808      \immediate\write
2809 \poemcontents{\string\contentspoemtitlefont\ \the\explanationscontentsname}
2810      \immediate\write
2811 \poemcontents{\string~ / \string~\ \string\pageref{explanatorynotes}}
2812      \fi
2813      \ifindexingon
2814      \immediate\write\poemcontents{\string\par \string\smallskip}
2815      \immediate\write
2816 \poemcontents{\string\contentspoemtitlefont\ \the\poemindexcontentsname}
2817      \immediate\write
2818 \poemcontents{\string~ / \string~\ \string\pageref{indexpage}\string\par}
2819      \fi
2820      \immediate\closeout\poemcontents
2821      \input \jobname.ctn
2822 \fi
2823 \clearpage
2824 \thispagestyle{volumetitlestyle}
2825 \vspace{106pt}
2826 \begin{center}
2827 {\poemtitlefont Note}
2828 \end{center}
2829
2830 \noindent The symbol \stanzaatbottomvalue\ is used to indicate
2831 a space between sections of a poem
2832 wherever such spaces are lost in pagination.
2833 \cleardoublepage
2834 }

```

\testforauxonfirstrun Put this in the preamble. It suppresses \finish, \puttextnotes, \putemendations, and \putexplanatory unless there is an .aux file from a previous run, this avoiding some error messages.

```

2835 \newcommand{\testforauxonfirstrun}{\IfFileExists{\jobname.aux}{\relax}
2836 {\let\finish=\relax}

```

```

2837 \let\puttextnotes=\relax
2838 \let\putexplanatory=\relax
2839 \let\putemendations=\relax
2840 \typeout{Run again to read in endnotes files}}

```

`\putpoemcontents` You may wish to do the tasks done by `\finish` separately. This will give you more flexibility. `\putpoemcontents` inserts the table of contents file from a prior run. Be sure to issue it *before* you issue `\makepoemcontents`.

```

2841 \newcommand{\putpoemcontents}{
2842 \IfFileExists{\jobname.ctn}{\input \jobname.ctn
2843 \clearpage \resetpagestyle\normalsize}
2844 {\typeout{Run again to input contents file here}}
2845 }

```

`\hyphenationforsmall` This command restores hyphenation for the backmatter sections of the book. Hyphenation is turned off in the main body of the book, because verse should not be hyphenated. This macro turns hyphenation on, but only for small roman, italic, and bold fonts. Backmatter sections are all set in `\small`. `\putemendations`, `\puttextnotes`, and `\putexplanatory` all call `\hyphenationforsmall`.

```

2846 \newcommand{\hyphenationforsmall}{\small\bf \hyphenchar\font=45
2847 \small\it \hyphenchar\font=45
2848 \small\rm \hyphenchar\font=45
2849 }

```

`\putemendations` This macro closes external file for emendations, reads it in, and puts an entry for the emendations into the table of contents file. The macro tests to see whether there is an `.aux` file from a previous run before doing this, and complains in the `.log` file if the `.aux` file does not exist.

```

2850 \newcommand{\putemendations}{
2851 \ifemendationson
2852 \ifemendationstwocol
2853 \literate\mend{\end{multicols}}
2854 \fi %\iftextnotetwocol
2855     \newpage
2856     \hyphenationforsmall
2857     \immediate\closeout\emendations
2858     \input \jobname.emd
2859 \contentsendnotestitle{\the\emendationscontentsname}{emendationnotes}
2860 \else
2861 \relax
2862 \fi}

```

`\putexplanatory` Does the same for explanatory notes.

```

2863 \newcommand{\putexplanatory}{
2864 \ifexplanon
2865 \ifexplanationstwocol
2866 \literate\explain{\end{multicols}}
2867 \fi %\iftextnotetwocol

```



```

2868 \newpage
2869 \hyphenationforsmall
2870 \immediate\closeout\explanations
2871 \input \jobname.enx
2872 \ifpoemcontentson
2873 \ifexplanon
2874 \contentsendnotestitle{\the\explanationscontentsname}{explanatorynotes}
2875 \fi
2876 \fi
2877 \else
2878 \relax
2879 \fi}

```

`\puttextnotes` Does the same for textual notes.

```

2880 \newcommand{\puttextnotes}{
2881 \iftextnoteson
2882 \iftextnotestwocol
2883 \literaltextnote{\end{multicols}}
2884 \fi %\iftextnotetwocol
2885 \newpage
2886 \hyphenationforsmall
2887 \immediate\closeout\textnotes
2888 \input \jobname.ent
2889 \contentsendnotestitle{\the\textnotescontentsname}{textualnotes}
2890 \else
2891 \relax
2892 \fi}

```

`\putpoemindex` Reads in the index of titles and first lines and adds an entry for the index into the table of contents.

```

2893 \newtoks{\poemindexname}
2894 \poemindexname={Index of Titles and First Lines}
2895 \newcommand{\change-poemindexname}[1]{\poemindexname={#1}}
2896 \newtoks{\poemindexheadername}
2897 \poemindexheadername={Index of Titles and First Lines}
2898 \newcommand{\change-poemindexheader}[1]{\poemindexheadername={#1}}
2899 \newtoks{\poemindexcontentsname}
2900 \poemindexcontentsname={Index of Titles and First Lines}
2901 \newcommand{\change-poemindexcontentsname}[1]{\poemindexcontentsname={#1}}
2902 \newcommand{\putpoemindex}{\ifindexingon
2903 \printindex
2904 \fi
2905 \ifpoemcontentson\ifindexingon
2906 \immediate\write\poemcontents{\string\par \string\smallskip}
2907 \immediate\write
2908 \poemcontents{\string\contentspoemtitlefont\ \the\poemindexcontentsname}
2909 \immediate\write
2910 \poemcontents{\string~\string\contentsleaders \string~\ \string\pageref{indexpage}\string\par}
2911 \fi\fi}

```

```

2912 \newcommand{\putmultiplepoemindex}[4]{%
2913 \ifindexingon
2914 \poemindexname={#2}
2915 \poemindexheadername={#3}
2916 \poemindexcontentsname={#4}
2917 \poemindexlabelname={#4}
2918 \printindex[#1][#2]
2919 \fi
2920 \ifpoemcontentson\ifindexingon
2921     \immediate\write\poemcontents{\string\par \string\smallskip}
2922     \immediate\write
2923 \poemcontents{\string\contentspoemtitlefont\ \the\poemindexcontentsname}
2924     \immediate\write
2925 \poemcontents{\string~ \string\contentsleaders \string~\
2926 \string\pageref{\the\poemindexlabelname}\string\par}
2927 \fi\fi
2928 }
2929 \newcommand{\noteaboutstanzamarkpage}{\begin{volumetitlepage}
2930 %\thispagestyle{volumetitlestyle}
2931 \vspace{106pt}
2932 \begin{center}
2933 {\poemtitlefont Note}
2934 \end{center}
2935
2936 \noindent The symbol \stanzaatbottomvalue\ is used to indicate
2937 a space between sections of a poem
2938 wherever such spaces are lost in pagination.
2939 \end{volumetitlepage}}

```

## 20.26 Visual formatting

The ideal in L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X is to separate content markup and formatting as completely as possible. In the text itself you simply mark the logical units (a poem, a title, a stanza, a textual note), and a header program like this interprets the meaning of those terms typographically. However, one still winds up having to do some visual formatting. Sometimes you have to enlarge or shrink a page by one line in order to avoid an intractable widow or club line, and when one does so one must be careful to do the same to the other member of the two-page spread of which that page is a part. These commands enable one to wiggle pagelength enough to handle these problems.

```

2940 \newcommand{\longpage}{\enlargethispage{\baselineskip}}
2941 \newcommand{\shortpage}{\enlargethispage{-\baselineskip}}

```

## 20.27 Special environments: cjquotation and theindex

An environment for special prose quotations within verse as in “Chief Joseph of the Nez Perce”

## cjquotation

```
2942 \newenvironment{cjquotation}
2943     {\tolerance=2000%
2944      \vspace{-\bigskipamount}
2945      \restoreverselinenumbers
2946      \language=255
2947      \noindent\relax
2948      \list{}\listparindent 0em%
2949          \itemindent 0em%
2950          \rightmargin 2em%
2951          \leftmargin 2em%
2952          \topsep 0em%
2953          \parskip 0em%
2954          \itemindent \listparindent
2955          \rightmargin \leftmargin
2956          \parsep \z@ \@plus\p@}%
2957     \item[]
2958     }
2959 \endlist}
```

**theindex** And the environment for the index:

```
2960 \newtoks{\poemindexlabelname}
2961 \poemindexlabelname={indexpage}
2962 \newcommand{\changeindexlabelname}[1]{\poemindexlabelname={#1}}
2963 \renewenvironment{theindex}
2964     {\par\clearpage{\pagestyle{volumetitlestyle}\cleardoublepage}
2965      \thispagestyle{volumetitlestyle}}
2966     \makeatletter
2967     \def\pmclidxitem{\par\hangindent 1em}
2968 \fancyhead[RO,LE]{\small\textrm{\thepage}}
2969 \fancyhead[CO]{\small{\em \the\poemindexheadername}}
2970 \fancyhead[CE]{\small{\em \the\poemindexheadername}}
2971 \fancyfoot{}
2972     \label{\the\poemindexlabelname}
2973     \leftthyphenmin=2\tolerance=500\language=0
2974     \normalfont \backmattertextfont
2975     \raggedright
2976     \begin{multicols}
2977 {2}[\backmattersink\begin{center}{\normalfont
2978 \backmatterheaderfont \the\poemindexname}\end{center}
2979 \backmatterafterheadersink]%
2980     \let\item\pmclidxitem
2981     {\end{multicols}\clearpage}
2982 \makeatother
```

Finally, some other miscellaneous environments.

```
2983 \newlength{\epigraphquoteleftmargin}
2984 \newlength{\epigraphquoterightmargin}
2985 \setlength{\epigraphquoteleftmargin}{1.5em}
```

```

2986 \setlength{\epigraphquoterightmargin}{1.5em}
2987 \newenvironment{epigraphquote}{\list{}{\rightmargin\epigraphquoterightmargin%
2988 \leftmargin\epigraphquoteleftmargin%
2989 \topsep 0pt%
2990 \partopsep 0pt%
2991 \listparindent 0pt%
2992 }%
2993 \item\relax}
2994 {\endlist}
2995 \newenvironment{volumetitlepagequote}{\list{}{\rightmargin \voladditionalamount%
2996 \leftmargin \voladditionalamount%
2997 \topsep 0pt%
2998 \partopsep 0pt%
2999 \listparindent 0pt
3000 }%
3001 \item\relax}
3002 {\endlist}

```

## Change History

v1.0	General: Initial version . . . . . 1	ber of the table of contents. Added a command to input the table of contents file. Added commands to input the external files for emendations, explanatory notes, textual notes, and the index of titles and first lines. Added a command to test whether there is an .aux file from a previous run and to prevent typesetting of the external files for emendations, explanatory notes, textual notes if there is not. Added a command to restore the main page style after the table of contents. . . . . 1
v1.01	General: Added macros for titles of poems without formal titles. Corrected typographical errors in manual. . . . . 1	
v1.1	General: Added commands to change mark in cases where page break fall (or does not fall) on stanza break. Added command to change the amount of indentation in runover lines in verse. Removed special geometry to make the program more generic. . . . . 1	v1.7
v1.11	General: Corrected bugs in headers for explanatory notes and emendations. . . . . 1	General: Changed how labels are made for use in contents and notes sections. Control sequences in titles (such as for italics and so on) no longer require special commands, although those commands are retained for backward compatibility. . . . . 1
v1.2	General: Accidentals and typescript variants test to see whether textual notes are being made. Corrected a bug when quoting verse in note sections. Added a command to change the page num-	v2.01
		General: Rewrote all of the title



	with the beginning of the line or with the end of the line. Also, you can choose to have it set the number always at the beginning if the line number is at the left, and always at the end if it is at the right. . . . .	1			
v2.38	General: Checked cases where macros might introduce extra white space. Made sure that line numbers for verse, prose, and paragraph-sentence prose line up. Fixed overlapping of paragraph and line numbers for paragraph-sentence mode. Up to four sentences can appear on a line in paragraph-line mode without having their marginal line numbers overlap. Fixed a bug that added an extra colon in footnotes in paragraph-sentence format. Changed “gutter” and “outer” line numbering in verse and paragraph-sentence prose to use Peter Wilson’s sidepars rather than marginpars. . . . .	1	v2.42	bers of new kinds of prose note. . . . .	1
				General: Fixed error in handling conditionals when setting prose numbered by sentence and paragraph. . . . .	1
			v2.43	General: Notes in prose numbered by sentence and paragraph number can refer only to the sentence number even when paragraphs are also being counted. . . . .	1
			v2.44	General: Fixed a bug which caused new kinds of endnotes in prose sections to add unwanted white space to the output. . . . .	1
			v2.45	General: Use of sidepar in v2.38 introduced a problem, causing line numbers sometimes to drift up a point. Changed commands for putting verse line numbers, but not paragraph and sentence numbers, to use marginpars again. . . . .	1
v2.39	General: Left a DeclareOption hanging in version 2.38. Fixed that. . . . .	1	v2.46	General: Changed definition of sidepar so that it uses struts to find the depth of the line, restored line number commands to use sidepar and its variants. . . . .	1
v2.391	General: Corrections to user’s guide. . . . .	1	v2.47	General: Changed name of sidepar to pcmclsidepar to avoid conflicts with the sidepar command from the memoir class, since they are no longer exactly the same. Added commands to put a marginal reference to the notes section in the margins of poem titles. . . . .	1
v2.392	General: More corrections to user’s guide. . . . .	1	v2.48	General: Added more general form of the commands to put a marginal reference to the notes section in the margins of poem titles. . . . .	1
v2.394	General: More corrections to user’s guide. . . . .	1			
v2.4	General: Commands to make new kinds of endnotes also make notes for line numbered prose sections and for prose sections with paragraph and sentence numbering. . . . .	1			
v2.41	General: Fixed a bug in line num-				

v2.49	General: Changed marginal reference command to use marginpar rather than pmclsidepar (alas, it still adds vertical white space after the title with pmclsidepar). Added marginal reference commands for sequences and sequence sections. Fixed errors in manual. . . . .	1
v2.50	General: Added marginal reference commands for poem sections, poem subtitles, epigraphs, and dedications. These commands no longer require an additional label command to set the label to which they refer. Added commands to make marginal references to the pages in notes sections where comments on individual lines may be found, for textual notes, explanatory notes, emendations, and user-defined notes. Added commands for changing the names of the Table of Contents, the various endnotes sections, and the running headers for the contents and endnotes sections, in order to facilitate editions of works in languages other than English. . . . .	1
v2.51	General: Changed prose section environment so that it does not always assume that the modulo for line numbers in prose is the same as the number in verse. Corrected a problem with alignment of line numbers in the prosesectionnoreset environment. Added commands to support generation of multiple indices using the splitindex package. Fixed a variety of small bugs, including a newly introduced one in the correction to textual notes for quoted	
	verse. . . . .	1
v2.52	General: Changed dedication to poemdedication to avoid a conflict with a command in koma-script. dedication command is provided using providecommand for compatibility . . . . .	1
v2.53	General: Changed the name of an internal token register to avoid a conflict with babel . . . . .	1
v2.531	General: Fixed a typo in example code. . . . .	1
v2.6	General: Added an optional argument to the poem environment to center the text block of the poem on the longest line. Added a switch to enable titles to be centered on the page. . . . .	1
v2.61	General: Added a boolean to switch notes to one note per paragraph form. Boolean to switch off poem titles in notes. Two column formatting for notes sections. . . . .	1
v2.62	General: You can adjust the margins of epigraphs, dedications, and similar things. Made the appearance of entries in the table of contents for endnotes sections customizable. Fixed a bug which caused user-defined endnotes to put extra white space in prose passages. . . . .	1
v2.63	General: Revisions to manual. . . . .	1
v2.64	General: Bug fix: remove extra white space in custom endnotes for prose sections when notes are in single paragraph mode. Fix appearance of page number in endnote sections. . . . .	1

# Index

Numbers written in italic refer to the page where the corresponding entry is described; numbers underlined refer to the code line of the definition; numbers in roman refer to the code lines where the entry is used.

Symbols	A
\! ..... 537	\accidental ..... <i>19</i> , <u>1606</u> , 1625
\@ ..... 87, 88, 2080, 2084, 2092, 2097	\addtolength . 108, 109, 215, 1875, 1888
\@auxout ..... 409, 584, 2261, 2264	\afterpoemskip .... 67, 329, 342, 2591
\@bsphack .... 362, 363, 408, 583, 2259	\aftersequencetitleskip ..... ..... 68, 1091, 1119, 1143, 1384
\@car ..... 1911	\appendtomacro . 1701, 1824, 1827, 1830
\@centercr .... 95, 101, 117, 304, 314	\argpageref ..... 771, 855, 1643
\@compoundlabelscratch ..... ... 872, 875, 881, 887, 1643, 1645	\attribution ..... <i>24</i> , <u>1477</u>
\@dblarg ..... 361	
\@esphack .... 400, 403, 411, 586, 2267	<b>B</b>
\@extract@ref ..... 1905, 1911, 1915	\backmatterafterheadersink ..... ..... 44, 611, 626, 1758, 2979
\@extractpageref ..... 1914, 1937	\backmatterheaderfont ..... ..... 41, 609, 625, 2978
\@extractref ..... 1910, 1927	\backmatterintrofont ..... 46
\@firstoftwo ..... 1900	\backmattersectiontitle ..... <u>1443</u>
\@ifnextchar ..... 1626, 1627	\backmattersink ..... ... 43, 608, 625, 1445, 1751, 2977
\@ixpt ..... 23	\backmattertextfont ..... ..... 45, 681, 719, 755, 788, 801, 812, 824, 835, 1760, 2974
\@latex@warning ..... 1923, 1933	\backmattervolumefont ..... ..... 47, 788, 801, 812, 824
\@listI ..... 18	\backmattervolumesubtitlefont 48, 834
\@memcnta ..... <u>430</u> , 435, 436	\baselineskip ..... 2940, 2941
\@minus ..... 14, 16, 24, 26, 28, 29	\beginngroup ..... 413, 1493, 1500, 1507, 1514, 1522, 1527, 1532, 1537, 1631, 1702, 1729
\@namedef ..... 422	\biblechapter ..... 2441
\@nil ..... 1907, 1918	\bibleverse ..... <u>2440</u>
\@pagemarktotextnotes ..... 764, 772	\booksection ..... <u>774</u>
\@plus ..... 14–16, 24–26, 28, 29, 2956	\booksectionpage ..... <u>347</u>
\@pmlsidepar ..... 361–363	\box ..... 403, 2507, 2525
\@poempagetotextnotes ..... 770, 940	\brokenline ..... <i>11</i> , <u>539</u> , 542, 555
\@poemtitletotextnotes .... 773, 943	\brokenlineatbeginning ..... <i>12</i> , <u>554</u>
\@secondcar ..... 1915, 1918	
\@secondoftwo ..... 1902	<b>C</b>
\@setfontsize ..... 13, 23	\c@cp@cntr ..... <u>448</u>
\@unexpandable@protect ..... 416	\c@contentsinfo .. 784, 797, 810, 821, 917, 952, 994, 1003, 1012, 1021, 1029, 1038, 1048, 1059, 1076, 1083, 1093, 1102, 1111, 1120, 1129, 1137, 1144, 1152, 1160,
\@vsa ..... 1543	
\\ ..... 95, 101, 117, 304, 314, 510, 526, 539, 552, 557, 1552, 1553	
\_ ..... 283, 284, 537, 834, 1592, 1647, 1745, 1747, 1977, 2593, 2605, 2680, 2785, 2787, 2789, 2791, 2794, 2797, 2801, 2804, 2809, 2811, 2816, 2818, 2830, 2908, 2910, 2923, 2925, 2936	



1169, 1178, 1187, 1194, 1202,  
 1217, 1241, 1249, 1256, 1264,  
 1272, 1281, 1291, 1301, 1309,  
 1317, 1326, 1346, 1366, 1375,  
 1387, 1397, 1406, 1415, 1424, 1446  
 \c@page ..... 406,  
     438, 544, 546, 572, 575, 2458, 2463  
 \centertitles ..... 9, 893  
 \centertitlesontrue ..... 893  
 \changecontentsheader ..... 594  
 \changecontentsname ..... 40, 592  
 \changeemendationscontentsname . 698  
 \changeemendationsheader ..... 695  
 \changeemendationsname ..... 41, 692  
 \changeexplanationscontentsname . 735  
 \changeexplanationsheader ..... 732  
 \changeexplanationsname .... 41, 729  
 \changemultiplepageabbrev ... 41, 276  
 \changenotesheader ..... 657  
 \changenotesname ..... 41, 654  
 \changepoemindexcontentsname .. 2901  
 \changepoemindexheader ..... 2898  
 \changepoemindexlabelname .... 2962  
 \changepoemindexname ..... 41, 2895  
 \changesinglepageabbrev .... 41, 274  
 \changetextnotescontentsname ... 660  
 \checknoteheaders .....  
     .... 1586, 1598, 1668, 1687, 1781  
 \checkoddpages ..... 364, 431  
 \checkprosenoteheaders .....  
     .... 1796, 1971, 1983, 2011, 2027  
 \citerange 1576, 1592, 2393, 2415, 2432  
 \cjquotation ..... 2942  
 \cleardoublepage .....  
     .... 270, 348, 351, 353, 354,  
     600, 670, 709, 746, 1737, 2833, 2964  
 \clearemptydoublepage ..... 270  
 \clearpage ..... 348, 600, 669,  
     708, 745, 840, 1736, 2458, 2462,  
     2703, 2756, 2823, 2843, 2964, 2981  
 \cleartorecto ..... 2458  
 \cleartoverso ..... 2462, 2567  
 \clubpenalty ..... 54  
 \columnsep ..... 60  
 \columnwidth ..... 384  
 \contentsendnotesdefaults .. 629, 649  
 \contentsendnotesfont .. 17, 645, 649  
 \contentsendnotesindent 17, 644, 649  
 \contentsendnotestitle .....  
     .... 648, 1843, 2859, 2874, 2889  
 \contentsentryoverrun .....  
     .... 300, 301, 307, 309, 918, 930  
 \contentsindentfive ..... 82  
 \contentsindentfiveamount ... 81,  
     82, 1282, 1292, 1302, 1310, 1317  
 \contentsindentfour .....  
     . 80, 1281, 1291, 1301, 1309, 1317  
 \contentsindentfouramount . 79, 80,  
     1039, 1049, 1077, 1170, 1179,  
     1242, 1249, 1257, 1265, 1273, 1327  
 \contentsindentone ..... 74,  
     644, 810, 821, 952, 994, 1083,  
     1093, 1102, 1346, 1366, 1375, 1387  
 \contentsindentoneamount .....  
     .... 73, 74, 301, 785, 798, 931  
 \contentsindentthree ..... 78,  
     1038, 1048, 1076, 1169, 1178,  
     1241, 1249, 1256, 1264, 1272, 1326  
 \contentsindentthreeamount .....  
     .... 77, 78, 1004, 1013,  
     1022, 1030, 1060, 1112, 1121,  
     1130, 1138, 1145, 1153, 1161,  
     1203, 1218, 1398, 1407, 1416, 1425  
 \contentsindenttwo .....  
     .. 76, 1003, 1012, 1021, 1029,  
     1059, 1111, 1120, 1129, 1137,  
     1144, 1152, 1160, 1187, 1194,  
     1202, 1217, 1397, 1406, 1415, 1424  
 \contentsindenttwoamount .. 75, 76,  
     811, 822, 953, 995, 1084, 1094,  
     1103, 1347, 1367, 1376, 1388, 1447  
 \contentsleaders .....  
     .... 633, 914, 922, 2910, 2925  
 \contentspoemtitlefont .....  
     .... 52, 645, 952, 994,  
     1003, 1012, 1021, 1029, 1038,  
     1048, 1059, 1076, 1083, 1129,  
     1137, 1152, 1160, 1169, 1178,  
     1187, 1194, 1202, 1217, 1241,  
     1249, 1256, 1264, 1272, 1281,  
     1291, 1301, 1309, 1317, 1326,  
     1346, 1366, 1375, 1397, 1406,  
     1415, 1424, 1446, 2785, 2789,  
     2794, 2801, 2809, 2816, 2908, 2923  
 \contentssequencetitlefont .. 51,  
     1093, 1102, 1111, 1120, 1144, 1387  
 \contentsvolumefont .....  
     .... 49, 784, 797, 810, 821  
 \contentsvolumesubtitlefont ....  
     .... 50, 830, 844





<code>\ifputpagenumberincontents</code> . . . . .	<code>\ifversopoemstillopen</code> 2547, 2581, 2712
. . . . . 174, 632, 921	<code>\ifversostanzapending</code> . . . 2539, 2666
<code>\ifputpagenumberinnotes</code> 176, 939, 1642	<code>\ifversostanzastillopen</code> . . . . .
<code>\ifputtitleinnotes</code> . . . . . 934, 942	. . . . . 2543, 2599, 2706
<code>\ifrangelemma</code> . . . . . 188,	<code>\ifvmode</code> . . . . . 420
1577, 1654, 1966, 1997, 2286, 2337	<code>\ifx</code> . . . . . 424, 1553, 1864, 1894, 1899
<code>\ifrecto</code> . . . . . 2529	<code>\ignorespaces</code> . . . . . 536, 2479
<code>\ifrectoemendationspending</code> 2549, 2724	<code>\includeaccidentalstrue</code> . . . . . 161
<code>\ifrectoexplanationspending</code> . . . . .	<code>\includetypescriptstrue</code> . . . . . 163
. . . . . 2553, 2728	<code>\incrementverselinenumber</code> . . . . .
<code>\ifrectopoempending</code> . . . . . 2533, 2716	. . . . . 286, 507, 512, 544, 546,
<code>\ifrectopoemstillopen</code> 2545, 2585, 2658	549, 556, 564, 572, 575, 578, 2608
<code>\ifrectostanzapending</code> . . . 2537, 2720	<code>\indentrunoververse</code> . . . . . 126
<code>\ifrectostanzastillopen</code> . . . . .	<code>\indexingontrue</code> . . . . . 15, 156
. . . . . 2541, 2602, 2652	<code>\inpoemfalse</code> 328, 341, 2583, 2587, 2590
<code>\ifredundantemendations</code> . . . . .	<code>\inpoemtrue</code> . . . . . 326, 339, 2575
. . . . . 164, 1652, 1995, 2335	<code>\instanzafalse</code> . . . . . 290, 2612
<code>\ifrefundefined</code> 1893, 1898, 1921, 1931	<code>\instanzatrue</code> . . . . . 283, 2593
<code>\ifrfv</code> . . . . . 123, 129, 130	<code>\integerfalse</code> . . . . . 1547
<code>\ifrunningsentencennumbers</code> . . . . .	<code>\integertrue</code> . . . . . 1545
. . . . . 2060, 2124, 2148, 2179, 2210	<code>\interjectiontitlefirstline</code> . . . 1335
<code>\ifsinglelinetitle</code> . . . . . 178, 858, 870	<code>\interjectiontitlelastline</code> . . . 1337
<code>\ifsourcesfootnotespara</code> . . 200, 2382	<code>\interjectiontitlemiddleline</code> . . 1340
<code>\ifspeciallinelock</code> 284, 503, 505, 2606	<code>\itemsep</code> . . . . . 30, 96, 102, 118, 307, 317
<code>\ifstrictpagecheck</code> . . . . . 433, 448	
<code>\iftextfootnotespara</code> . . . . . 198, 2387	<b>J</b>
<code>\iftextnotesatend</code> 192, 833, 846, 937,	<code>\JHdedication</code> . . . . . 1437
1492, 1521, 1609, 1611, 1620, 1622	<code>\JHepigraph</code> . . . . . 1440
<code>\iftextnoteson</code> . . . . .	<code>\JHlabel</code> . . . . . 1360,
. . . . . 150, 833, 846, 936, 1460,	1365, 1374, 1380, 1385, 1396,
1596, 1607, 1618, 1625, 1626,	1405, 1414, 1423, 1432, 1438, 1441
1630, 1653, 1980, 1996, 2036,	<code>\JHpoemfirstsectiontitle</code> . . . . . 1420
2046, 2057, 2304, 2336, 2358,	<code>\JHpoemsectiontitle</code> . . . . . 1411
2368, 2378, 2443, 2768, 2800, 2881	<code>\JHpoemsubtitle</code> . . . . . 1435
<code>\iftextnotessinglepar</code> . . 17, 1594,	<code>\JHpoemtitle</code> . . . . . 30, 1359
1600, 1612, 1636, 1659, 1985,	<code>\JHprosesectiontitle</code> . . . . . 1371
2003, 2041, 2052, 2309, 2363, 2373	<code>\JHsequencefirstsectiontitle</code> . . 1402
<code>\iftextnotestwocol</code> . . 17, 662, 682, 2882	<code>\JHsequencesectionsu</code> 1429, 1435
<code>\iftextnotetwocol</code> . . 2854, 2867, 2884	<code>\JHsequencesectiontitle</code> . . . . . 1393
<code>\iftitlefirstline</code> . . . . . 180, 861, 873	<code>\JHsequencetitle</code> . . . . . 1382
<code>\iftitlelastline</code> . . . . . 184	
<code>\iftitlemiddleline</code> . . . . . 182, 876	<b>L</b>
<code>\iftwocol</code> . . . . . 1839	<code>\language</code> 303, 313, 321, 334, 611, 680,
<code>\ifverselinenumbers</code> . . . . . 151, 516	718, 754, 1759, 2570, 2946, 2973
<code>\ifverserightflush</code> . . . . . 186	<code>\lastcontentslinefalse</code> . . . . . 173
<code>\ifverso</code> . . . . . 2531	<code>\lastlinesettings</code> . . . . . 815,
<code>\ifversoemendationspending</code> 2551, 2670	977, 1009, 1044, 1117, 1175, 1287
<code>\ifversoexplanationspending</code> . . . . .	<code>\lastskip</code> . . . . . 2471
. . . . . 2555, 2674	<code>\lefthead</code> . . . . . 16, 206
<code>\ifversopoempending</code> . . . . . 2535, 2662	<code>\lefthyphenmin</code> . . 611, 626, 1758, 2973

<code>\leftlinenumbers</code>	1874, 1887	<code>\marginparsep</code>	357, 382, 384, 388, 390, 458, 462, 467, 1871–1874, 1884– 1887, 2082, 2086, 2087, 2090, 2095, 2100, 2485, 2496, 2513, 2514
<code>\leftskip</code>	344–346	<code>\marginparwidth</code>	358, 382, 390, 395, 397, 459, 463, 468, 2485, 2488, 2496, 2499, 2501, 2517, 2519
<code>\linebend</code>	10, <a href="#">526</a>	<code>\marginsentencenumberformat</code>	2076, 2104, 2175, 2206, 2233
<code>\linelabel</code>	1978	<code>\marginsentencenumberstrue</code>	2061
<code>\linenumberfont</code>	1870, 1883	<code>\margrefemendation</code>	31, 1469
<code>\linenumbersep</code>	1871–1875, 1884–1888	<code>\margrefexplanatory</code>	31, 1464
<code>\linenumberside</code>	497	<code>\margrefmarker</code>	1381, 1452–1454, 1457, 1475
<code>\linewidth</code>	100, 105, 107, 332	<code>\margrefspecial</code>	1474
<code>\list</code>	96, 102, 118, 305, 315, 2948, 2987, 2995	<code>\margreftextnote</code>	31, <a href="#">1450</a>
<code>\literalcontents</code>	599, 612, 631, 637, 783, 786, 799, 823, 830, 844, 920, 926, 1513	<code>\mark</code>	283, 284, 326, 328, 339, 341, 678, 716, 752, 767, 1590, 1591, 1750, 1975, 1976, 2295, 2296, 2575, 2583, 2587, 2590, 2593, 2605
<code>\literalcontentsshort</code>	1536	<code>\marn</code>	495, 2619
<code>\literatelemend</code>	708, 1499, 1669, 1671, 2012, 2014, 2350, 2352, 2853	<code>\meaning</code>	1496, 1503, 1510, 1517, 1524, 1529, 1534, 1538, 1634, 1732
<code>\literatelemendshort</code>	1526	<code>\meta</code>	1552
<code>\literatelexplain</code>	745, 1506, 1688, 1690, 2028, 2030, 2324, 2326, 2866	<code>\middlecontentslinefalse</code>	171
<code>\literatelexplainshort</code>	1531	<code>\middlelinesettings</code>	804, 972, 1000, 1035, 1108, 1166, 1278
<code>\literaltextnote</code>	669, 773, 787, 800, 1492, 1599, 1601, 1613, 1637, 1660, 1984, 1986, 2004, 2042, 2053, 2308, 2310, 2364, 2374, 2883	<code>\missingpunct</code>	18, 1541
<code>\literaltextnoteshort</code>	1520	<code>\modulolinenumbers</code>	1859, 1864, 1866
<code>\llap</code>	2245	<code>\multilinesequencesepalnty</code>	86, 1100
<code>\long</code>	362, 363, 412, 1701, 1918	<code>\multilinetitlepenalty</code>	84, 992, 1027, 1158, 1270
<code>\longpage</code>	31, 2940	<code>\multiplepageabbrev</code>	275–277, 281
<b>M</b>			
<code>\m@ken@teholder</code>	869, 902, 910, 1082, 1357	<code>\mymarks</code>	272, 675, 676, 713, 714, 749, 750, 1745, 1747
<code>\m@kep@emlabel</code>	858, 901, 909, 1081, 1356	<b>N</b>	
<code>\maintitlepage</code>	<a href="#">347</a>	<code>\newcount</code>	430, 2467
<code>maintitlepage (environment)</code>	16	<code>\newlabel</code>	585, 2262, 2265
<code>\makeemendations</code>	17, <a href="#">689</a>	<code>\newlength</code>	213, 300, 310, 331, 453, 2983, 2984
<code>\makeexplanatorynotes</code>	17, <a href="#">726</a>	<code>\newlinechar</code>	1495, 1502, 1509, 1516, 1632, 1731
<code>\makeindex</code>	158	<code>\newpage</code>	270, 350, 354, 356, 1836, 2460, 2464, 2764, 2769, 2772, 2777, 2855, 2868, 2885
<code>\makelinenumbers</code>	191	<code>\newpmemlabel</code>	410, <a href="#">422</a>
<code>\makemargreflabel</code>	1455, 1461, 1466, 1471, 1850	<code>\newtoks</code>	144–146, 272, 275, 588, 590, 652, 655, 658, 690, 693,
<code>\makepoemcontents</code>	13, <a href="#">588</a>		
<code>\makepoemlabel</code>	854, 860, 863		
<code>\maketextnotes</code>	17, <a href="#">613</a>		
<code>\makeverselinenumbers</code>	10, 190, 191		
<code>\marginpar</code>	480, 482, 484, 496, 1381, 1457, 1475, 2108, 2111, 2113, 2620		

696, 727, 730, 733, 1452, 2063,  
2270, 2639, 2893, 2896, 2899, 2960

`\next` . . . . . 1494, 1496, 1501,  
1503, 1508, 1510, 1515, 1517,  
1523, 1524, 1528, 1529, 1533,  
1534, 1538, 1633, 1634, 1730, 1732

`\noemendyetfalse` . . . . . 1667,  
2010, 2347, 2671, 2695, 2725, 2748

`\noemendyettrue` . . . . . 168,  
322, 335, 1877, 1890, 2071, 2571

`\noexplainyetfalse` . . . . . 1686,  
2026, 2321, 2675, 2701, 2729, 2754

`\noexplainyettrue` . . . . . 169,  
323, 336, 1878, 1891, 2072, 2572

`\noindent` . . . . .  
2444, 2448, 2452, 2830, 2936, 2947

`\nopagebreak` . . . . . 1437, 1439,  
1440, 1442, 1477, 1478, 1480–1483

`\normalfont` . . . . . 599,  
609, 681, 719, 755, 1760, 2974, 2977

`\nostanzaatbottom` . . . . . 9, 2456, 2457

`\nostanzaatbottomvalue` 283, 2456, 2593

`\noteaboutstanzamarkpage` . . . . . 2929

`\noteheaderconcat` . . . . .  
. 2137, 2138, 2140–2142, 2165,  
2166, 2168, 2169, 2196, 2197,  
2199, 2200, 2223, 2224, 2226, 2227

`\notesheadername` . . 655–657, 675, 676

`\notespoemclubpenalty` . . . . . 55, 938

`\notessequenceclubpenalty` . . . . . 56

`\notesvolumetitlepenalty` . . . . .  
. . . . . 57, 787, 800, 847

`\numbersgutterfalse` . . . 470, 477, 2099

`\numbersguttertrue` . . . . . 473, 2094

`\numbersrightfalse` 460, 469, 2081, 2089

`\numbersrighttrue` . . . . 360, 464, 2085

`\numbersswitchfalse` . . . . .  
. . . . . 359, 460, 464, 2081, 2085

`\numbersswitchtrue` . . . . . 469, 2089

**O**

`\oddpagefalse` . . . . . 368, 376, 432

`\oddpagetrue` . . . . . 370, 374, 436, 438

`\oldleftskip` . . . . . 344, 346

**P**

`\pagestyle{fancy}` . . . . . 213

`\paralleltextfalse` . . . . . 2528

`\paralleltextstrue` . . . . . 2568

`\parindent` . . 65, 215, 379, 685, 723,  
759, 1763, 1764, 2484, 2495, 2512

`\parsep` . . . . . 29, 30, 2956

`\parskip` . . . . . 2953

`\partopsep` . . . . . 306, 316, 2990, 2998

`\penalty` . . . . . 55–57, 83–86, 283, 2593

`\phantom` . . . . . 540, 2174, 2205, 2232

`\pmaccidental` . . . . . 39, 2357, 2378

`\pmccheckifinteger` . . . . .  
. . . . . 1542, 1566, 1954, 2273

`\pmcgoem` . . . . . 1544, 1551–1553, 1558

`\pmchecknoteheaders` . . . . .  
. . . . . 1811, 2291, 2306, 2322, 2348

`\pmciterange` . . . . . 1812, 2285,  
2307, 2323, 2349, 2404, 2421, 2438

`\pmclbsphack` . . . . .  
. . . . . 2468, 2483, 2494, 2510, 2511

`\pmclcontentsheader` . . . . .  
. . . . . 590, 591, 595, 605, 606

`\pmclcontentsname` . . 588, 589, 593, 610

`\pmclesphack` . . . . .  
2474, 2491, 2504, 2507, 2522, 2525

`\pmclidxitem` . . . . . 2967, 2980

`\pmclleftsidepar` 491, 2114, 2466, 2621

`\pmclnotesname` . . . . . 652–654, 679

`\pmclreversesideparfalse` . . . . .  
. . . . . 442, 472, 2094

`\pmclreversesidepartrue` 443, 476, 2099

`\pmclrightsidepar` . . . . .  
. . . . . 489, 498, 2112, 2509, 2645

`\pmclsavsf` . . . . . 2467, 2472, 2477

`\pmclsavsk` . . . . . 2466, 2471, 2478

`\pmclsidepar` . . . . . 361, 487, 2109

`\pmclsideparswitchfalse` . . . . . 445

`\pmclsideparswitchtrue` . . . . 446, 469

`\pmclsideparvshift` . . . . 394, 402,  
453, 2487, 2498, 2506, 2516, 2524

`\pmmemendation` . . . . . 39, 2332, 2420

`\pmmemlabel` . . . . . 408, 434

`\pmmemlabelref` . . . . . 422, 435

`\pmmemprotected@write` . . . . . 409, 412

`\pmmexplanatory` . . . . . 39, 2315, 2437

`\pmmnoteheader` . . . . .  
. 2063, 2138, 2142, 2166, 2169,  
2197, 2200, 2224, 2227, 2286, 2288

`\pmmnumbersgutter` . . . . . 38, 2092

`\pmmnumbersouter` . . . . . 38, 2097

`\pmmnumbersswitch` . . . 2089, 2093, 2098

`\pmmnumberstoleft` . . . . . 38, 2080

`\pmmnumberstoright` . . . . . 38, 2084

`\pmpara` ..... 38, 2246, 2441  
`\pmparainmartrue` ..... 2238  
`\pmpararunningfalse` ..... 2239  
`\pmpararunningformat` .. 38, 2243, 2252  
`\pmpararunningtrue` ..... 38  
`\pmparasfalse` ..... 2237  
`\pmparastrue` ..... 2247  
`\pmparmarformat` ..... 38, 2242, 2245  
`\pmrangeend` 2270, 2279, 2281, 2286, 2301  
`\pmresetlemmacounters` 1817, 2298,  
2313, 2329, 2355, 2404, 2421, 2438  
`\pmsection` ..... 37  
`\pmsentence` ..... 37, 2121, 2440  
`\pmsentencebypara` ..... 38  
`\pmsentencebyparatrue` ..... 2241  
`\pmsentencefour` ..... 37, 2207  
`\pmsentencethree` ..... 37, 2176  
`\pmsentencetwo` ..... 37, 2145  
`\pmsparainmartrue` ..... 38  
`\pmtextnote` ..... 39,  
2303, 2338, 2340, 2361, 2371, 2403  
`\pmtsaccidental` ..... 39, 2378  
`\pmtsvariant` ..... 39, 2368  
`\poem` ..... 320  
`poem (environment)` ..... 8  
`\poemcontents` ..... 597,  
598, 630, 633, 634, 639, 640,  
918, 919, 922, 923, 928–930,  
1517, 1538, 2783, 2785, 2787–  
2789, 2791, 2792, 2794, 2797,  
2798, 2801, 2804, 2805, 2809,  
2811, 2814, 2816, 2818, 2820,  
2906, 2908, 2910, 2921, 2923, 2925  
`\poemcontentsontrue` ..... 596  
`\poemdedication` ..... 24, 1477  
`\poemdotfill` ..... 282  
`\poemfirstsectiontitle` ..... 1055  
`\poemfirstsectiontitlebaretitle` 1063  
`\poemindexcontentsname` .....  
2816, 2899–2901, 2908, 2916, 2923  
`\poemindexheadername` .....  
.... 2896–2898, 2915, 2969, 2970  
`\poemindexlabelname` .....  
.... 2917, 2926, 2960–2962, 2972  
`\poemindexname` . 2893–2895, 2914, 2978  
`\poemlinelabel` ..... 12, 583, 2642  
`\poemsectionbaretitle` ..... 1053  
`\poemsectiontitle` ..... 26, 1017  
`\poemsectiontitlebaretitle` .... 1067  
`\poemsectiontitlefirstline` .... 1017  
`\poemsectiontitlelastline` ..... 1017  
`\poemsectiontitlemiddleline` ... 1017  
`\poemsectiontitlenocontents` ... 1053  
`\poemsubsectiontitle` ..... 1053  
`\poemsubtitle` ..... 8, 1221  
`\poemtitle` ..... 7, 856, 966, 1860  
`\poemtitlebaretitle` ..... 25, 961  
`\poemtitlefirstline` ..... 25, 967  
`\poemtitlefont` .. 38, 950, 957, 962,  
992, 1001, 1010, 1126, 1134,  
1149, 1158, 1167, 1176, 1184,  
1191, 1199, 1214, 1234, 1344,  
1363, 1372, 1394, 1403, 2827, 2933  
`\poemtitleitalic` ..... 965  
`\poemtitleitalic{}{}` ..... 25  
`\poemtitlelastline` ..... 25, 967  
`\poemtitlemiddleline` ..... 25, 967  
`\poemtitlenocontents` ..... 25, 956  
`\poemtitlenotitle` .... 26, 1053, 1861  
`\poemtitlenotitleitalic` ..... 1053  
`\poemtitlenotitleitalic{}{}` .... 26  
`\poemtitlepenalty` .....  
. 83, 625, 950, 957, 962, 1018,  
1068, 1073, 1126, 1149, 1191,  
1234, 1238, 1246, 1297, 1306,  
1344, 1363, 1372, 1394, 1412, 1444  
`\printindex` ..... 2780, 2903, 2918  
`\proseaccidental` ..... 36, 2035  
`\prosebysentencetrue` ..... 2068  
`\proseciterange` .....  
.... 1965, 1977, 2401, 2419, 2436  
`\proseemendation` ..... 1991, 2417  
`\proseexplanatory` .... 36, 2019, 2434  
`\proselinelabel` .. 35, 1790, 1978,  
1981, 1993, 2021, 2399, 2417, 2434  
`\proseemendation` ..... 36  
`\prosesection` ..... 35  
`\prosesectiontitle` ..... 35, 1860  
`\prosesectiontitlenotitle` ..... 1861  
`\prosetextnote` ..... 36,  
1978, 1998, 2000, 2039, 2050, 2398  
`\prosetsaccidental` ..... 36, 2057  
`\prosetsvariant` ..... 36, 2046  
`\protect` ..... 416, 1922, 1932  
`\protected@edef` ..... 1543  
`\protected@write` .... 584, 2261, 2264  
`\providecommand` .. 408, 422, 423, 1484  
`\putemendations` ... 14, 24, 2839, 2850  
`\putexplanatory` ... 14, 24, 2838, 2863  
`\putmultiplepoemindex` ..... 24, 2912





<code>\sequencefirstsectiontitlefirstline</code>	..... 1197	<code>\sequencesubsubsectiontitle</code>	..... 1305
<code>\sequencefirstsectiontitlelastline</code>	..... 1210	<code>\sequencetitle</code>	..... 26, 1089
<code>\sequencefirstsectiontitlemiddleline</code>	..... 1207	<code>\sequencetitlefirstline</code>	..... 1098
<code>\sequencefirstsectiontitlenocontents</code>	..... 1183	<code>\sequencetitlefont</code>	..... 39, 1090, 1100, 1109, 1118, 1142, 1383
<code>\sequencefirstsectiontitlenonotes</code>	..... 1213	<code>\sequencetitlelastline</code>	..... 1098
<code>\sequencefirstsubsectionmiddleline</code>	..... 1341	<code>\sequencetitlemiddleline</code>	..... 1098
<code>\sequencefirstsubsectiontitle</code>	..... 1252	<code>\sequencetitlenonotes</code>	..... 1141
<code>\sequencefirstsubsectiontitlefirstline</code>	..... 1322, 1336	<code>\sequencetitlepenalty</code>	..... 85, 1090, 1383
<code>\sequencefirstsubsectiontitlelastline</code>	..... 1333, 1338	<code>\set@margp@emtitle</code>	..... ..... 1344, 1351, 1363, 1372, 1383, 1394, 1403, 1412, 1421, 1430
<code>\sequencefirstsubsectiontitlemiddleline</code>	..... 1331	<code>\set@p@emtitle</code>	..... ..... 779, 792, 805, 816, 895, 905, 950, 957, 962, 992, 1001, 1010, 1018, 1027, 1036, 1045, 1056, 1064, 1068, 1073, 1090, 1100, 1109, 1118, 1126, 1134, 1142, 1149, 1158, 1167, 1176, 1184, 1191, 1199, 1214, 1234, 1238, 1246, 1253, 1261, 1270, 1279, 1288, 1297, 1306, 1314, 1324, 1444
<code>\sequencefirstsubsectiontitlenocontents</code>	..... 1260	<code>\setbox</code>	..... 396, 2500, 2518
<code>\sequencefirstsubsubsectiontitlenocontents</code>	..... 1313	<code>\setcontentsleaders</code>	..... 13, 913, 916
<code>\sequencesectionsubtitle</code>	..... 1221	<code>\setcounterfrompageref</code>	..... 765, 1644, 1930
<code>\sequencesectiontitle</code>	..... 26, 1125, 1230	<code>\setcounterfromref</code>	..... ..... 1573, 1920, 1944, 1962
<code>\sequencesectiontitlebaretitle</code>	..... 1233	<code>\setendnotessectiontitle</code>	..... ..... 624, 679, 717, 753, 1755
<code>\sequencesectiontitlefirstline</code>	..... 1156, 1232	<code>\setendnotessectiontitledefaults</code>	..... ..... 614, 625
<code>\sequencesectiontitlefirstlineitalic</code>	..... 1231	<code>\setlemmarange</code>	..... 1559, 1597, 1651, 1682, 1775, 2392, 2414, 2431
<code>\sequencesectiontitleitalic</code>	..... 1229	<code>\setmargpoemtitle</code>	..... 1343, 1360
<code>\sequencesectiontitleitalicnonotes</code>	..... 1226	<code>\setmargref</code>	..... 1456, 1462, 1467, 1472, 1851
<code>\sequencesectiontitlelastline</code>	..... 1174, 1211	<code>\setmargrefmarker</code>	..... 31, 1454
<code>\sequencesectiontitlemiddleline</code>	..... 1165, 1208	<code>\setmpargpoemtitle</code>	..... 31
<code>\sequencesectiontitlenocontents</code>	..... 1190	<code>\setpmlanmarange</code>	..... 1806, 2272, 2305, 2317, 2334, 2403, 2420, 2437
<code>\sequencesectiontitlenonotes</code>	..... 1141, 1227	<code>\setpmodulo</code>	..... 37, 2077
<code>\sequencesubsectiontitle</code>	..... 1237	<code>\setprosebysentence</code>	..... 37, 2068
<code>\sequencesubsectiontitlefirstline</code>	..... 1268	<code>\setproselemmarange</code>	..... 1791, 1945, 1982, 1994, 2022, 2400, 2418, 2435
<code>\sequencesubsectiontitlelastline</code>	..... 1286, 1334	<code>\setproselemmastart</code>	..... 1893, 1946, 1953
<code>\sequencesubsectiontitlemiddleline</code>	..... 1277, 1332	<code>\setprosemodulo</code>	..... 35, 1859
<code>\sequencesubsectiontitlenocontents</code>	..... 1054, 1245	<code>\setsynchroflag</code>	..... 40, 2639
<code>\sequencesubsubsectiontitle</code>	..... 1296	<code>\setverselinemodulo</code>	..... 10, 522
		<code>\shortpage</code>	..... 31, 2941
		<code>\sim</code>	..... 1540

<code>\singlelinetitlefalse</code>	. 967, 972, 977	1171, 1180, 1188, 1195, 1204,
<code>\singlelinetitletrue</code>	..... 179, 987	1219, 1243, 1250, 1258, 1266,
<code>\singlepageabbrev</code>	..... 272–274, 280	1274, 1283, 1293, 1303, 1311,
<code>\smallskip</code>	..... 66, 1489, 2788,	1318, 1328, 1348, 1368, 1377,
	2792, 2798, 2805, 2814, 2906, 2921	1390, 1399, 1408, 1417, 1426, 1448
<code>\sources</code>	..... 18, 1349, 1369,	<code>\testforauxonfirstrun</code>
	1378, 1391, 1400, 1409, 1418,	..... 23, <u>2835</u>
	1427, 1433, 1439, 1442, <u>1629</u> , 2396	<code>\textfootnotesparatrue</code>
<code>\sourcesfootnotesparafalse</code>	..... 201	..... 199
<code>\space</code>	..... 1923, 1933	<code>\textnote</code>
<code>\spacefactor</code>	..... 2472, 2477	..... 18,
<code>\speciallinelockfalse</code>	.....	<u>1594</u> , 1610, 1621, 1655, 1657, 2392
	..... 288, 504, 509, 2610	<code>\textnotes</code>
<code>\speciallinelocktrue</code>	..... 544,	.....
	546, 549, 556, 561, 572, 575, 578	. 667, 668, 765, 767, 771, 834–
<code>\stanza</code>	..... <u>283</u>	836, 847–851, 938, 1461, 1496,
<code>stanza (environment)</code>	..... 9	1524, 1598, 1609, 1611, 1620,
<code>\stanzaatbottom</code>	..... 9, 2454, 2455	1622, 1634, 1983, 2038, 2040,
<code>\stanzaatbottomvalue</code>	.....	2049, 2051, 2306, 2307, 2360,
	..... 284, 2454, 2605, 2830, 2936	2362, 2370, 2372, 2444, 2770, 2887
<code>\stanzalinestraddle</code>	..... 12, 296	<code>\textnotesatendfalse</code>
<code>\stanzaskip</code>	..... 69, 292, 2614	..... 2381
<code>\startparalleltexts</code>	..... 40, <u>2565</u>	<code>\textnotesatendtrue</code>
<code>\startrectopage</code>	..... 40, <u>2705</u>	..... 193
<code>\startverseline</code>	..... 12, <u>560</u> , 567	<code>\textnotesatfoot</code>
<code>\startversopage</code>	..... 40, <u>2651</u>	..... <u>2379</u>
<code>\stepcounter</code>	..... 434	<code>\textnotescontentsname</code>
<code>\strictpagecheckfalse</code>	..... 450	.....
<code>\strictpagechecktrue</code>	..... 466, 2089	..... 658–660, 2802, 2889
<code>\strip</code>	1491, 1496, 1503, 1510, 1517,	<code>\textnotesontrue</code>
	1524, 1529, 1534, 1538, 1634, 1732	..... 665, 2380
<code>\strut</code>	..... 363, 2494, 2511	<code>\textnotestwocolfalse</code>
<code>\strutbox</code>	..... 403, 2507, 2525	..... 663
<code>\subsectiontitlefont</code>	40, 1018, 1027,	<code>\textsuperscript</code>
	1036, 1045, 1056, 1064, 1068,	..... 2075
	1073, 1221, 1238, 1246, 1253,	<code>\textwidth</code>
	1261, 1270, 1279, 1288, 1297,	..... 388, 2513, 2514
	1306, 1314, 1324, 1412, 1421, 1430	<code>\the</code>
<code>\switchlinenumbers</code>	..... 1872, 1885	280, 281, 406, 605, 606, 610, 675,
<code>\synchroflag</code>	... 2639, 2640, 2645, 2646	676, 679, 713, 714, 717, 749,
<code>\synchrolabel</code>	..... 40, <u>2642</u>	750, 753, 879, 885, 1381, 1457,
<code>\synchroref</code>	..... 40, 2644	1475, 1647, 1704, 2286, 2288,
		2645, 2646, 2795, 2802, 2809,
		2816, 2859, 2874, 2889, 2908,
		2923, 2926, 2969, 2970, 2972, 2978
		<code>\thecp@cntr</code>
		..... 434, 435
		<code>\theindex</code>
		..... <u>2960</u>
		<code>\thelemmaend</code>
		..... 1578, 1967, 2279
		<code>\thelemmalines</code>
		.....
		.... 1563, 1571, 1950, 1959, 2278
		<code>\thelineindexrepeat</code>
		..... 515, 2647
		<code>\themargrefnumber</code>
		..... 1455, 1457
		<code>\thenotepageholdernote</code>
		.....
		..... 1590, 1975, 2295
		<code>\thenotepageholdertitle</code>
		.....
		..... 768, 1591, 1976, 2296
		<code>\thepmcm@page</code>
		..... <u>406</u> , 410, 414
		<code>\thepmindexcount</code>
		..... 2158, 2189
		<code>\thepmmodulo</code>
		..... 2158, 2189
		<code>\thepmparagraph</code>
		..... 2137,
		2165, 2196, 2223, 2245, 2252, 2262
		<code>\thepmsentencenumber</code>
		.....
		..... 2103, 2125, 2137, 2140,

**T**

<code>\t@xtnotesinfo</code>	.....
	..... 788, 801, 812, 824, 936,
	954, 959, 996, 1005, 1014, 1023,
	1031, 1040, 1050, 1061, 1078,
	1085, 1096, 1104, 1113, 1122,
	1131, 1139, 1146, 1154, 1162,

2141, 2149, 2165, 2168, 2174, 2180, 2196, 2199, 2205, 2211, 2223, 2226, 2232, 2262, 2265, 2277	<code>\tolerance</code> .....
<code>\thepoemnumber</code> .....	611, 680, 718, 754, 1759, 2943, 2973
863, 872, 875, 881, 887, 924, 940	<code>\topsep</code> . 28, 305, 315, 2952, 2989, 2997
<code>\theprintlineindex</code> .....	<code>\tsaccidental</code> .....
515, 2647	1617
<code>\theproselinenumber</code> .....	<code>\tsentry</code> .....
..... 1949, 1958, 1967, 1969	20, 1626
<code>\theverselinenumber</code> 480, 482, 484, 487, 489, 492, 495–498, 585, 1562, 1570, 1578, 1580, 2619–2621	<code>\tsvariant</code> .....
<code>\thispagestyle</code> . 349–351, 353, 354, 356, 601, 671, 710, 747, 840, 1738, 2459, 2463, 2824, 2930, 2965	20, 1617
<code>\tightgeometry</code> .....	<code>\tweakbrokenline</code> .....
<u>1</u>	11, 541
<code>\tightleading</code> .....	<code>\tweakstartverseline</code> .....
10	12, 566
<code>\titleconcat</code> .....	<code>\typeout</code> .....
879, 880, 885, 886	2840, 2844
<code>\titleentryoverrun</code> . 310, 311, 317, 319, 895, 903, 905, 911, 1351, 1358	
<code>\titlefirstlinefalse</code> .....	
181, 984	
<code>\titlefirstlinetrue</code> .....	
968	
<code>\titleincrement</code> 146, 878, 879, 884, 885	
<code>\titleindent</code> .....	
8, 64, 1019, 1028, 1037, 1046, 1057, 1065, 1069, 1074, 1127, 1135, 1150, 1159, 1168, 1177, 1185, 1192, 1200, 1215, 1221, 1235, 1239, 1247, 1254, 1262, 1271, 1280, 1289, 1298, 1307, 1315, 1325, 1395, 1404, 1413, 1422, 1431	
<code>\titleindentamount</code> .....	
..... 61, 64, 65, 1020, 1028, 1037, 1047, 1058, 1066, 1070, 1128, 1136, 1151, 1159, 1168, 1177, 1186, 1193, 1201, 1216, 1235, 1396, 1405, 1414, 1423, 1432	
<code>\titleindentthreamount</code> .....	
..... 63, 1300, 1308, 1316	
<code>\titleindenttwoamount</code> .....	
..... 62, 1075, 1240, 1248, 1255, 1263, 1271, 1280, 1290, 1325	
<code>\titlelastlinefalse</code> .....	
185, 986	
<code>\titlelastlinetrue</code> .....	
978	
<code>\titlemiddlelinefalse</code> .....	
183, 985	
<code>\titlemiddlelinetrue</code> .....	
973	
<code>\titlesofar</code> ... 145, 877, 879, 883, 885	
<code>\titletoothernotes</code> .....	
..... 1641, 1677, 1697, 1768	
<code>\toks@</code> .....	
1703, 1704	
	<b>U</b>
	<code>\undefined</code> .....
	1864
	<b>V</b>
	<code>\vadjust</code> 362, 363, 2483, 2494, 2510, 2511
	<code>\vbox</code> .....
	393, 2486, 2497, 2515
	<code>\verseindent</code> .....
	11, 59
	<code>\verseline</code> .....
	9, 503
	<code>\verselinenumbersgutter</code> ....
	10, 465
	<code>\verselinenumbersouter</code> ....
	10, 465
	<code>\verselinenumbersswitch</code> ....
	10, 465
	<code>\verselinenumberstoleft</code> ....
	10, 457
	<code>\verselinenumberstoright</code> ....
	10, 457
	<code>\verselinenumberstrue</code> .....
	..... 154, 190, 666, 706, 742
	<code>\versephantom</code> .....
	11, 539
	<code>\verserightflushfalse</code> .....
	187
	<code>\versewidth</code> .....
	8, 331
	<code>\versoemendationspendingfalse</code> ..
	..... 2552, 2672
	<code>\versoemendationspendingtrue</code> ..
	2694
	<code>\versoexplanationspendingfalse</code> .
	..... 2556, 2676
	<code>\versoexplanationspendingtrue</code> ..
	..... 2700, 2753
	<code>\versofalse</code> .....
	2532, 2680
	<code>\versopoempendingfalse</code> ..
	2536, 2664
	<code>\versopoempendingtrue</code> ...
	2682, 2688
	<code>\versopoemstilopenfalse</code> .....
	..... 2548, 2710, 2714
	<code>\versopoemstilopentrue</code> .
	2683, 2689
	<code>\versostanzapendingfalse</code> .
	2540, 2668
	<code>\versostanzapendingtrue</code> .....
	2686
	<code>\versostanzastilopenfalse</code> 2544, 2708
	<code>\versostanzastilopentrue</code> .....
	2687
	<code>\versotrue</code> .....
	2678
	<code>\voladditionalamount</code> ..
	72, 2995, 2996
	<code>\volumeattribution</code> .....
	16, 1477
	<code>\volumededication</code> .....
	1477
	<code>\volumeepigraph</code> .....
	16, 1477

